

Julie Moore
with additional material by Edward Alden
Series Adviser **Catherine Walter**

Navigate

Workbook
with key

Advanced → **C1**

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

 **Oxford 3000™** *Navigate* has been based on the Oxford 3000 to ensure that learners are only covering the most relevant vocabulary.

1 Change	page 4	4 Responsibility	page 24
Grammar		Grammar	
■ comparing	4	■ degrees of obligation	24
■ continuous forms	6	■ passives	27
Vocabulary		Vocabulary	
■ time and speed	5	■ responsibility	25
■ change	7	■ phrases with <i>care</i>	26
■ using a dictionary	8	■ connotation	28
Speaking		Speaking	
■ vague language (1): approximation	9	■ formal negotiations	29
Writing		Writing	
■ a report based on a graph	9	■ a balanced argument essay	29
2 Feats	page 10	Listening for pleasure	
Grammar		■ Sitting is ...	30
■ noun phrases	10	Review: Units 3 & 4	31
■ perfect forms	12		
Vocabulary		5 Power	page 32
■ phrases with adverbs	11	Grammar	
■ collocations for describing problems and solutions	12	■ relative clauses	32
■ collocations of perception and sound	14	■ quantifiers	34
Speaking		Vocabulary	
■ an informal talk	15	■ common phrases with relative pronouns	33
Writing		■ phrases with <i>of</i> to describe quantity	35
■ a summary	15	■ compound adjectives and nouns	36
Reading for pleasure		Speaking	
■ The Open Window	16	■ managing conversations	37
Review: Units 1 & 2	17	Writing	
		■ emphasis: inversion and cleft sentences	37
3 Teams	page 18	6 Play	page 38
Grammar		Grammar	
■ auxiliary verbs	19	■ uses of <i>would</i>	38
■ articles	20	■ verb patterns	40
Vocabulary		Vocabulary	
■ behaviour and attitude	18	■ preferences	39
■ success and failure	21	■ leisure, relaxation and stress	41
■ prepositional phrases	22	■ words with more than one meaning	42
Speaking		Speaking	
■ checking and rephrasing	23	■ vague language (2)	43
Writing		Writing	
■ a proposal	23	■ online reviews	43
		Reading for pleasure	
		■ Apps that make a difference	44
		Review: Units 5 & 6	45

7 Emotion and reason page 46

Grammar

- hypotheses 46
- unreality 48

Vocabulary

- emotions 47
- reacting to events 49
- metaphor 50

Speaking

- informal negotiations 51

Writing

- comment adverbs 51

8 Plastic page 52

Grammar

- probability and speculation 53
- participle clauses 54

Vocabulary

- properties of materials 52
- phrasal verbs 55
- formal and informal language 56

Speaking

- speculating, comparing and contrasting 57

Writing

- a problem-solution-evaluation essay or report 57

Listening for pleasure

- The science of happiness 58

Review: Units 7 & 8 59

9 Learning page 60

Grammar

- uses of *will* 60
- the future 63

Vocabulary

- idiomatic phrases with *will* 61
- higher education 62
- three ways to create new words 64

Speaking

- giving a presentation 65

Writing

- discourse markers 65

10 New page 66

Grammar

- noun phrases 66
- position of adverbials 68

Vocabulary

- money 67
- new and old 69
- understanding idioms 70

Speaking

- reaching a consensus 71

Writing

- an email enquiry 71

Reading for pleasure

- Mindfulness 72

Review: Units 9 & 10 73

11 Origins page 74

Grammar

- adjective position 74
- *whoever, whatever, wherever, no matter* 76

Vocabulary

- adjectives and adverbs beginning with *a-* 75
- food preparation 77
- fixed and semi-fixed phrases 78

Speaking

- emphasis 79

Writing

- a blog entry 79

12 Memory page 80

Grammar

- causative *have* and *get* 80
- reporting verbs 82

Vocabulary

- special meanings of *off, down* and *over* 81
- describing research and results 83
- noticing, selecting and recording collocations 84

Speaking

- talking about a magazine story 85

Writing

- a magazine story 85

Listening for pleasure

- What makes you *you*? 86

Review: Units 11 & 12 87

Audioscripts page 88

Answer key page 98

Change

1.1 Up to speed?

Grammar comparing

1 Complete the comments with phrases from the box.

as long as a lot less far more of much more leisurely
nearly as much nowhere near significantly longer
the more



As a teenager, I spent ages getting ready to go out. Nowadays, I'm a busy mum and I don't spend 1 _____ time on myself. 2 _____ my time goes on sorting out the kids.



When I was working, I'd just grab a quick sandwich for lunch. Now I'm retired, lunch is a 3 _____ affair. I can spend 4 _____ I want preparing something nice and enjoying it.



I used to waste hours every week going round the supermarket. Nowadays, I do most of my grocery shopping online. It's 5 _____ as time-consuming and it's 6 _____ stressful, too.



Why is it that work always expands to fill the time you have? Recently, I've been working 7 _____ hours than usual and it feels like 8 _____ time I spend in the office, the more work piles up on my desk. I just never seem to get on top of things.

2a Match sentence beginnings 1–6 to endings a–h. There are two endings you do not need.

- 1 If I walk to work, it takes almost ____
- 2 Cycling around is a great deal ____
- 3 Just walking or cycling about is every bit ____
- 4 I know I'm nowhere near ____
- 5 Children are spending considerably less ____
- 6 Far fewer ____
- a as fit as I used to be.
- b twice as long as going by tram.
- c children walk to school than twenty years ago.
- d as good for you as going to the gym.
- e time is allocated in the school timetable for sport.
- f as much exercise as I should do.
- g healthier than driving everywhere.
- h time playing outside than previous generations.

b 1.1))) Listen and check your answers.

3 Read the article and choose the correct words in *italics*.



Speed reading

In a modern world where time is money, how have our reading habits been affected? Are we reading ¹ *more quickly / quicker* or do we just expect the things we read to be ² *a great deal condensed / much more condensed* into short, manageable chunks? The answer perhaps lies in the type of text you're reading.

When we're reading online, we skip rapidly from site to site, from screen to screen in search of what we want. Does this mean that as readers we now have ³ *far less patience / much less patient* and ⁴ *the shorter / much shorter* attention spans than we used to? Not necessarily. Much of this activity is actually skimming or scanning to check whether something is useful or interesting and whether we want to read on. In many ways, we spend ⁵ *no less / nowhere near* time on each piece of online text than we would traditionally have done flicking through a print newspaper or magazine. In either case, it's not until a headline catches our eye that we slow down and take ⁶ *a longer bit / a bit longer* to properly read the text.

For those writing for an online environment, this means finding ⁷ *more creative than / ever more creative* ways of grabbing the reader's attention before they click through to the next link. Including key information up front makes it ⁸ *a great deal like / more likely* that the time-poor website visitors will realize right away that they're in the right place. Making key information easier to locate by using bullet points and simple, descriptive headings will also keep your audience on your page ⁹ *the longer bit / a little longer* as they scroll down and spot more useful stuff coming up.

But what about when we're reading literature, do the same rules apply? The average reader works their way through a piece of prose at ¹⁰ *no more than / nearly more than* about 250–300 words per minute, which is roughly a page of text. If you try to read through a novel ¹¹ *significantly more quickly / more significantly quickly*, then you start to lose a lot of what makes literature such a pleasure. When we read for pleasure, we are ¹² *almost less / much less* focused on picking out useful information or key words. Instead, the language itself and the way the writer puts words together is ¹³ *every bit as / as every bit* important as the information conveyed. The longer you spend reading a passage, ¹⁴ *the more vivid a / a more vivid* picture you create in your mind.

Sometimes an escape from the fast-moving internet age is just what we need, so maybe it's time to slow down and lose yourself in a good book.

Vocabulary time and speed

- 4 Complete the comments with phrases from the box. Make any other necessary changes.

behind the times short and sharp the last minute
time and again time drags time flies time management
up to speed with hindsight

I much prefer it when the shop's busy. At the weekend, it's non-stop and ¹ _____. It's on the quieter days, when there's not much to do that ² _____ and you're constantly clock-watching and waiting for the end of the day.

When I took over as head of the HR department, they were a bit ³ _____. I've worked hard to introduce new procedures and get everyone ⁴ _____ with the latest ideas.

Grace needs to improve her ⁵ _____ skills. ⁶ _____, she leave things to ⁷ _____, then everything becomes a rush.

I think my writing style has improved. ⁸ _____, I realize my early blog posts were rather long and rambling. Now I try to keep my ideas ⁹ _____ so that readers don't lose interest.

- 5 Rewrite the sentences, replacing the words in *italics* with phrases from exercise 4.
- It was only when I moved to the city that I realized how *stuck in the past* my small hometown was.

 - It's easy to see, *looking back*, why the show was so successful.

 - Repeatedly*, we hear excuses about why the scheme has been delayed.

 - Keep your message *brief*; your audience won't remember complicated details.

 - Due to technical issues, the show had to be cancelled *just before it was due to start*.

 - This course will make sure that all staff are *familiar* with the latest safety requirements.

I can ...

make comparisons.

talk about time and speed.

Very well Quite well More practice



1.2 Managing change

Grammar continuous forms

- 1 Choose the correct words or phrases in italics to complete the text.

Flexible working

Over recent decades, the workplace ¹ *has been gradually changing / was gradually changing* in various ways. One key change is to the hours we work. The old nine-to-five routine is no longer the norm as more and more employers ² *were recognizing / are recognizing* the benefits of flexible working. Flexible working can be defined as a way of working that suits the employee's needs, and it's especially attractive to parents who ³ *bring up / are bringing up* young children or people who ⁴ *have been looking after / are looking after* disabled or elderly relatives. Flexible working makes it easier for these groups to balance their work and family responsibilities. The benefit to the employer is that it enables them to retain experienced and qualified staff who might otherwise be lost. These new ways of working come in a number of different forms.

Job-sharing is where two people ⁵ *do / are doing* one job and split the hours they work. For example, if a woman returns to work after having a baby, she can go back to the role she ⁶ *had been doing / has been doing* before her maternity leave, but on a part-time basis. So that on the days that ⁷ *she wasn't working / she's not working*, her job-share colleague will be covering her duties.

Working from home is another alternative in certain jobs. With improvements in internet technology, people with largely desk-based jobs ⁸ *have increasingly chosen / are increasingly choosing* to spend at least some of their time working from home.



Flexitime means the employee ⁹ *chooses / is choosing* when to start and end their working day, within agreed limits. They ¹⁰ *usually work / are usually working* 'core hours', say between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m., but can make up the remaining hours at either end of the day. This is perfect for parents who need to finish in time to collect the kids from school.

- 2 Put the words in the right order. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 becoming / is / flexible working / more popular .

- 2 from home / I / since last year / been / working / have .

- 3 commuting / each day / for / were / three hours / both of them .

- 4 staff / are / of our / part time / getting on for a quarter / choosing to work .

- 5 returning / after maternity leave / are / more female staff / to work .

- 6 very well to / adapting / flexible working practices / is / the company .

- 7 in practice / working / are / the job-share arrangements / well .

- 8 introducing / from next month / be / the new flexitime system / we / will .

- 3 Complete the case study using an appropriate form of the verbs in brackets.

CASE STUDY

Nine months ago, Maria's elderly mother moved in with her family. At the time, Maria ¹ _____ (work) full time in a busy solicitor's office. Initially, Maria ² _____ (carry on) working as usual, leaving her mother at home on her own. Problems ³ _____ (start) almost straightaway, though. She left her mother her work number in case of emergencies, but soon she ⁴ _____ (receive) calls several times a day. Then, after a couple of minor accidents, Maria decided the situation ⁵ _____ (become) too stressful. So she ⁶ _____ (approach) her manager about flexible working.

For the past six months, her mother ⁷ _____ (attend) a day care centre three days a week while Maria goes into the office. On the other two days, Maria ⁸ _____ (work) from home. 'So far, it ⁹ _____ (work out) fine. I can be working at my desk in the study while Mum ¹⁰ _____ (watch) TV or reading in the other room. She seems much more settled now, and I can get on with work without worrying about her.'

Vocabulary change

4 Complete the text with words from the box.

adapt bring about consultation facilitate
implementing imposed resist

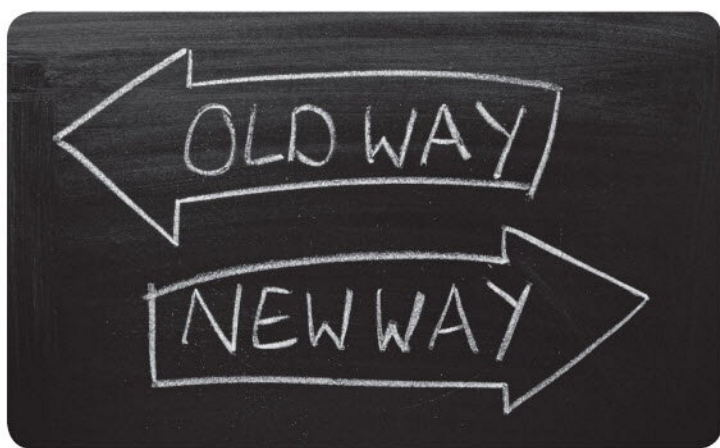
Understanding the reasons for change

People often ¹ _____ change because they don't understand the reasons behind it. Before ² _____ major changes, an open ³ _____ process needs to take place. One of the first steps in this process is to explain why change is necessary.

Many things cause organizational change. These include:

- ▶ The need to ⁴ _____ to a changing market because of economic circumstances, tighter competition or changing customer demands.
- ▶ Technological developments which can ⁵ _____ major changes in working practices.
- ▶ Changes ⁶ _____ from outside, for example, by new legislation or regulations.

Making the reasons for change clear at the outset can ⁷ _____ the process which follows.



5a Complete the table.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
¹ _____	resist	² _____
³ _____	implement	
consultation	⁴ _____	
⁵ _____ / ⁶ _____	adapt	⁷ _____ / ⁸ _____
⁹ _____	impose	¹⁰ _____
¹¹ _____ / ¹² _____	facilitate	

b 1.2))) Listen and check.

PRONUNCIATION stress in word families

- c Underline the stressed syllable on each word in the table.
- d 1.2))) Listen again, check and repeat. Which word families have changing stress?

6 Complete the comments with the correct form of the words from the table in exercise 5.

It's the ¹ _____ of changes from above that upset most people. Employees weren't ² _____ about the plans, the management just announced what was going to happen.

On the whole, I think the ³ _____ of the new system went fairly smoothly. There were no major problems.

A lot of staff were initially quite ⁴ _____ to the new working practices, but they're getting used to them now. People are surprisingly ⁵ _____.

Better communication between staff and management is ⁶ _____ by an employee forum.

I can ...

use continuous forms.

talk about change.

Very well Quite well More practice

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

1.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary using a dictionary

- 1 Put the dictionary labels from the box into the categories 1–4.

adjective approving disapproving formal humorous
informal intransitive literary noun transitive
uncountable verb

- 1 Word class: _____, _____, _____
- 2 Grammar: _____, _____, _____
- 3 Style/register: _____, _____, _____
- 4 Connotation: _____, _____, _____

- 2 Label the highlighted parts of the dictionary extracts with words from the box. There are two words you do not need.

connotation definition dependent preposition
example idiom pronunciation spelling variety

ele·va·tor ⓘ /'elɪvətə(r)/ noun **1** ⓘ (NAmE) (BrE lift) a machine that carries people or goods up and down to different levels in a building or a mine: It's on the fifth floor, so we'd better take the elevator.

spe·cial·ize (BrE also -ise) /'speʃəlaɪz/ verb [I] ~ (in sth) to become an expert in a particular area of work, study or business; to spend more time on one area of work, etc. than on others: Many students prefer not to specialize too soon. ◇ He specialized in criminal law. ◇ The shop specializes in hand-made chocolates.

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____

- 3 Which labels from exercises 1 and 2 could be applied to the words in italics? Check the words in a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 I saw Joe the next day in one of the local *sidewalk* cafés. *variety* = North American English; word class = noun
- 2 This is a great way to entertain the *kiddies* over the school holidays. _____
- 3 Zoe is a *petite*, softly spoken woman in her thirties. _____
- 4 The presentation given by the council was *as clear as mud*, leaving residents with many unanswered questions. _____
- 5 What *advice* would you give to new designers just starting out? _____
- 6 Employers should *implement* a policy that *emphasizes* safety in the workplace. _____;

Vocabulary extension

- 4a Write the full form of these common abbreviations used for recording vocabulary.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1 idm: _____ | 5 syn: _____ |
| 2 sb: _____ | 6 abbr: _____ |
| 3 phr v: _____ | 7 sth: _____ |
| 4 BrE: _____ | 8 opp: _____ |

- b Complete the vocabulary notes using the abbreviations in exercise 4a.

modify – change ¹ _____ slightly,
e.g. to make it more suitable; ² _____ **adapt**
They modified the entrance to make it more accessible for disabled users.

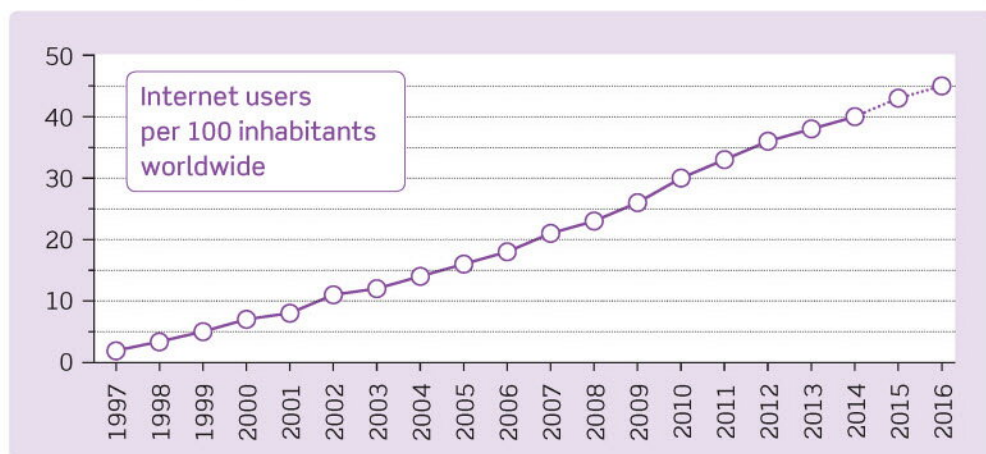
chop and change (informal ³ _____, BrE)
– keep changing from one thing to another
The team can't keep chopping and changing managers every five minutes.

maximum (⁴ _____ max.) the biggest, fastest, etc. possible; ⁵ _____ **minimum**
the maximum number/amount/speed

1.4 Writing and speaking

Writing a report based on a graph

- 1 Choose the best options in *italics* to complete the sentences describing data from the graph.



- From / In 1998, only around 3% of people worldwide used the internet.
- The number of active internet users *grew* / *has grown* dramatically between / from 1998 and 2015.
- By / From the year 2011, the percentage of people able to get online *reached* / *stood* at around one-third (33%).
- Over the *next three years* / *three years after*, that figure increased *to* / *by* 40%.
- In / According to some estimates, internet coverage is expected to reach the 45% mark some time in 2016.

- 2 Complete the report based on the graph using the prompts in brackets.

Worldwide internet coverage

Perhaps one of the most significant developments in the 21st century so far has been the dramatic growth of the internet. ¹ _____ (report / publish / 2015 / show) that the percentage of the world's population with access to the internet ² _____ (increase / rapidly) during the early years of the 21st century. The figure ³ _____ (rise / around 7% / 2000 / 42% / January 2015).

According to the report, the number of people with internet access worldwide ⁴ _____ (expect / reach / 45% / 2016). This is, in part, due to easier access via mobile devices. Mobile devices overtook conventional laptop and desktop computers ⁵ _____ (terms / internet access) in 2014 and this trend seems set to continue, with more and more people using mobile devices to get online.

Speaking vague language (1): approximation

- 3a Rewrite the extracts from a presentation replacing the underlined parts with more approximate phrases from the box. Make any other necessary changes. There may be more than one possible answer.

an incredible number of
~~a number of~~ approximately
 dozens of hundreds of
 just over nearly upwards of

A number of

- ~~Seven~~ libraries are facing closure in our city.
- ~~Sixty-five~~ staff are in danger of losing their jobs this month.
- Staff costs account for ~~82%~~ of the libraries' budget.
- The council needs to make ~~£1.1 million~~ of cuts in public spending.
- Nationally over the past five years, library visits have fallen by ~~an estimated~~ 15%.
- The number of books being lent is down by ~~19.8%~~.
- ~~510~~ libraries are threatened with closure across the country.
- ~~More than 200,000~~ people have signed petitions to try and save their local libraries.

- b 1.3 Listen and compare your answers.

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use a dictionary.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write a report based on a graph.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use vague language to approximate.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

2.1 Feats of nature

Grammar noun phrases

- 1 Read the Q&A with a wildlife photographer. For each noun phrase in bold, circle the main noun.

Q&A:

the wildlife photographer



What's the best thing about your job?

As a wildlife photographer, I get to travel all over the world and I've been privileged to experience **1 some of the most spectacular sights in the natural world.**

What's the most spectacular sight you've ever experienced?

I think perhaps the most amazing spectacle I've ever witnessed is **2 the annual mass migration of wildebeest across the plains of the Serengeti in Africa.** It's a truly breathtaking sight.

And your worst experience?

I once spent **3 two awful twelve-hour days in Papua New Guinea, waiting for a particularly shy bird in a mosquito-infested swamp;** that was pretty awful.

What's your next assignment?

My next trip is to Indonesia as part of **4 my ongoing work to highlight what's happening to the critically endangered Sumatran orangutan.** I hope that by raising public awareness through my photography more can be done to save these wonderful creatures.

Are there any animals you'd still like to photograph?

I'd love to photograph polar bears in the wild because they're just **5 one of the most iconic animals on the planet.**

- 2 Make full noun phrases by matching 1-7 to a-g and adding a main noun from the box.

dolphins facts gathering insect insight skills techniques

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 an enormous superpod of | a of grazing animals |
| 2 an incredibly small | b about plant biology |
| 3 the incredible acrobatic | c of this tiny hummingbird |
| 4 ultra slow-motion filming | d into the life of this shy creature |
| 5 the world's largest | e up to 5,000 strong |
| 6 a fascinating | f with delicate, silvery wings |
| 7 some basic scientific | g to capture insects in flight |

- 1 an enormous superpod of dolphins up to 5,000 strong
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____

- 3 Make noun phrases using the prompts before and after the main noun in bold. Change the form of words and add any extra words if necessary.

- 1 the chameleon – amazing – **ability** – alter – skin colour – match – surroundings
the chameleon's amazing ability to alter its skin colour to match its surroundings
- 2 six-tonne – male – African – **elephant** – stand – middle – road

- 3 incredible – **patience** – need – wait – many hours – capture – perfect – shot

- 4 the critically – endangered – snow – **leopard** – find – mountains – central – Asia

Vocabulary phrases with adverbs

4 Circle the correct adverb in italics.

- I'm fascinated by dolphins because they're just such *highly* / *strongly* / *utterly* intelligent animals.
- The view from the top of the hill was *exceedingly* / *highly* / *utterly* breathtaking.
- The landscape was *awfully* / *highly* / *radically* different from anything I'd experienced before.
- Those tiny little ants can give you a *badly* / *seriously* / *strongly* painful bite.
- I'm *particularly* / *remarkably* / *specially* interested in photographing tropical birds.
- These orchids are *exceedingly* / *radically* / *utterly* rare and difficult to find.
- From inside the tent, the lions sounded *absolutely* / *awfully* / *critically* close to the camp.
- A number of the animals on the island are *critically* / *radically* / *unbelievably* endangered species found nowhere else.

5 Make adverbs from the adjectives in brackets and put them in the correct position. Make any other necessary changes.

- The two species have adapted to live in ^{radically} different climates. (radical)
- In the autumn, the leaves of the trees create beautiful patterns as they reflect on the surface of the lake. (unbelievable)
- The plant only grows on steep cliff faces that are hard to reach. (awful)
- The rock types found on the east coast of the Atlantic are similar to those found on the west coast. (remarkable)
- The mayfly is just one part of this complex wetland ecosystem. (extraordinary)
- Many species of frogs are already reaching low population levels. (critical)
- These tropical waters support a diverse range of marine life to explore. (incredible)

6 Match the adverbs to the adjectives and complete the texts.

completely	harsh
incredibly	lifeless
particularly	well-adapted

The tree tumbo, with its rather dried-up leaves, looks at first sight to be ¹ completely lifeless. However, beneath the surface, it has long roots to search out underground water, making it ² _____ to the ³ _____ dry environment of the Namib Desert where it grows.



absolutely	compromised
seriously	efficient
unbelievably	vital

Despite all the technological developments of modern agriculture, the humble honeybee is still ⁴ _____ for world food production. These tiny creatures are ⁵ _____ when it comes to pollinating food crops, including fruits, vegetables and nuts; a process man has yet to perfect on a large scale. If bee numbers continue to fall, production of staple food crops that we all rely on could be ⁶ _____.

incredibly	long
remarkably	terrifying
utterly	unharmd

In their first few days of life, the chicks of the barnacle goose in Greenland are faced with one of the most extreme survival challenges in nature. After hatching in nests high up on cliffs, they have to take a/an ⁷ _____ leap to reach the feeding grounds some 120 metres below. They launch themselves into the air and freefall down the ⁸ _____ drop, bouncing off rocks on the way down, but amazingly most arrive at the bottom ⁹ _____.

I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

recognize and use noun phrases (1).

☐
☐
☐

understand and use phrases with adverbs.

☐
☐
☐

2.2 Feats of engineering

Vocabulary collocations for describing problems and solutions

- 1 Match beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h.
- 1 The extremes of temperature **presented** ____
 - 2 This type of large-scale project **entails** ____
 - 3 Many of the early space missions **encountered** ____
 - 4 Engineering pioneers like Watt and Stevenson had to **overcome** ____
 - 5 This mission takes us another step towards **realizing** ____
 - 6 The burning of food crops to provide energy does **pose** ____
 - 7 We are looking to engineers as well as politicians to **come up with** ____
 - 8 This new book attempts to **tackle** ____
- a incredible challenges for the engineers.
 - b considerable physical obstacles to carry out their work.
 - c serious ethical questions with the pressures already on food production.
 - d the age-old problem of making science interesting to school kids.
 - e tremendous research effort and massive financial investment.
 - f technical difficulties before they even got off the ground.
 - g our dream of affordable space travel for all.
 - h solutions to the world's water problems.
- 2 Complete the text using the correct form of the verbs in bold from exercise 1. There is one verb you do not need.

Engineering the future

In America, the attitude that 'learning is earning' has attracted increasing numbers of students to subjects like finance, law and business, because they believe it's the best way to ¹ _____ their ambition of a high-paid career. It's an attitude that we see repeated in numerous countries around the world, including the UK. However, in the modern knowledge economy, the resulting lack of graduates in science, technology and engineering ² _____ a significant problem for high-tech industries in these countries. One approach to ³ _____ the issue is to recruit graduates from elsewhere. In China, for example, around 37% of students are studying engineering, and in Germany the figure stands at 22%, compared to only 7% in the UK and just 5% in the USA. Integrating overseas workers into a company, though, ⁴ _____ challenges of its own. Whether it's Chinese engineers working in South Africa or German project managers in Brazil, there are, inevitably, both language and cultural barriers to ⁵ _____. Although this may ⁶ _____ an increased awareness of cultural sensitivities, it does also offer huge benefits and learning opportunities. The pooling of cultures and educational backgrounds often leads teams to ⁷ _____ new and novel solutions to problems they need to solve together.

Grammar perfect forms

- 3a Read the beginning of a talk about engineering and sport. Think about what verbs and verb forms might be used to complete the text.
- b 2.1 Listen and complete the text in exercise 3a.

“

The sporting world ¹ _____ significantly over the past century. When we look back at old black-and-white footage of athletics events from the past, it all looks incredibly slow. And our perceptions aren't wrong. The statistics show that every few years, 0.1 of a second ² _____ off the time it takes to run the 100-metre sprint. So in 2008, Usain Bolt ³ _____ 100 metres in 9.69 seconds, and in 2009 he did it in 9.58 seconds. Many believe that in the next few years, the 9.5-second barrier ⁴ _____.

You could argue that it's the athlete's ability and dedication that ⁵ _____ these improvements; that modern athletes just work harder than their counterparts of fifty years ago. To an extent, that's true. Since 1981, fully professional athletes ⁶ _____ to compete in the Olympic Games, for example. So now they ⁷ _____ every waking and sleeping moment of their lives to pushing their bodies to the limits.



But as a scientist, I have to argue that it's actually the scientific advances in the past century that ⁸ _____ a more important role. These advances ⁹ _____ from a number of different fields. Biomechanical engineering is the science of how we move our bodies and how we could move our bodies more efficiently in order to be faster. The new knowledge that's come from research in this area enables athletes to train smarter and to develop new techniques. And advances in materials science ¹⁰ _____ sports clothing and equipment through the development of radically new materials. We no longer see sprinters running round a track in heavy leather shoes and bulky cotton sports gear.

4 Put the words and phrases in the right order to make questions from the audience after the talk in exercise 3. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 the biggest / In your view, / has / sport / contribution to / which / made / area of science ?

- 2 been / advances in / How / have / significant / for athletes / the science of nutrition ?

- 3 the ten-second barrier / without / could / sprinters / Do you think / broken / modern sports equipment / have ?

- 4 at the same rate / Have / men / sprinters / faster / been / female / as / getting ?

- 5 most / benefitted / from / Which / scientific developments / other sports / have ?

- 6 technology / helped / have / in / How / disabled athletes / advances ?

5 Complete sentences 1–8 using the verbs from the box in a perfect form.

also/get become break ~~ever/run~~ might/achieve revolutionize
see time would not/be

- 1 In 1990, only eight men had ever run the 100 metres in under ten seconds, but just twenty-five years later it _____ the standard target for any world-class sprinter.
- 2 Of course, athletes _____ fitter and stronger over the past century due to our better understanding of food and nutrition.
- 3 It's interesting to speculate what times some of the great runners of the past _____ with the benefit of modern equipment and training.
- 4 Since 1977, all internationally recognized athletics events _____ using automatic recording systems that are accurate to the hundredth of a second.
- 5 By the end of the decade, a number of world records _____ thanks to scientific innovations.
- 6 Advances in carbon fibre technology _____ the sport of cycling, making bikes both lighter and stronger.
- 7 Many of the technological improvements that we _____ in the cars we drive over the past fifty years were initially developed in motorsport.
- 8 Developments in engineering and materials science have enabled disabled athletes to compete in sports that _____ possible even twenty-five years ago.

I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

use collocations to describe problems and solutions.

☐
☐
☐

use perfect forms.

☐
☐
☐

2.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary collocations of perception and sound

- 1 Complete the conversations with nouns from the box. There are two words you do not need.

attention difference environment
noise sight silence vision

- 1 A I often go and study in the café round the corner just to make a change from being stuck in my room. They've got free Wi-Fi and the coffee's really good.
B Oh no, I couldn't concentrate in a noisy ¹ _____ like that. I'd find it too distracting.
A It's not that bad, just sort of the buzz of conversation. Actually, I quite like a bit of background ² _____, it makes me feel less isolated and that life's still going on around me.
B I need total ³ _____ when I'm studying, it's the only way I can focus.
A Well, everyone's different I guess. You've just got to do what works for you.
- 2 A Hey, I like your new glasses.
B Thanks, I'm still feeling a bit self-conscious, though. It's the first time I've ever had to wear glasses. When I was younger I had twenty-twenty ⁴ _____, but I guess it's one those of things about getting older.
A I know, I haven't had my eyes tested for years.
B It's definitely worth it. I've really noticed the ⁵ _____ since I got these. Everything's so much clearer and I don't have to hold things at arm's length anymore to read the small print!

➔ **STUDY TIP** When you record new collocations, remember to record not just the obvious pair of words (e.g. *catch + sight*), but also any other words that form the complete phrase, such as prepositions (*catch + sight + of sb./sth.*).

- 2 Complete the sentences with a word from each box.

attention difference (x2) environment feat silence

between in (x3) of to

- 1 Employees should wear ear defenders when working _____ a noisy _____.
2 She paid little _____ the people around her, so absorbed was she in her work.
3 I've noticed a big _____ attitudes in the city and out here in the countryside.
4 I've really noticed the _____ how I feel since I started exercising more.
5 We all sat there _____ total _____, waiting for our names to be called.
6 The college team achieved the impressive _____ winning for the third successive year.

Vocabulary extension

- 3 Read the descriptions and underline the collocations that go with the words in bold. Consider verbs, nouns, adjectives, adverbs and prepositions.

When I walk into my grandparents' house, it's full of familiar ¹ **smells**. The first thing you notice is the sweet ² **scent** of flowers; my grandmother always has a vase of fresh flowers on the table. But it also ³ **smells** faintly of smoke from my grandfather's cigars.

On a recent trip to Argentina, I tried *mate*, a traditional South American drink. It has quite a bitter ⁴ **taste**, a little like green tea, but it's a much stronger ⁵ **flavour**. The locals think it ⁶ **tastes** delicious, but I wasn't so sure.

If you've got flu, you generally experience the usual cold-like ⁷ **symptoms**, but you may also have a high ⁸ **temperature**. You may lose your ⁹ **appetite**. And some people ¹⁰ **feel** an uncomfortable sensation when anything touches their skin, even lightly.

- 4 Circle two words in italics to make phrases.

- 1 a (*familiar*) / *severe* / (*strong*) smell
2 a *foul* / *fresh* / *sweet* scent
3 smell *faintly* / *highly* / *strongly* of
4 a *bitter* / *hard* / *sour* taste
5 a *strong* / *subtle* / *soft* flavour
6 taste *boring* / *delicious* / *sweet*
7 *mild* / *large* / *cold-like* symptoms
8 *develop* / *have* / *hold* a high temperature
9 *lose* / *regain* / *remove* your appetite
10 feel *an impression* / *a pain* / *a sensation*

2.4 Writing and speaking

Writing a summary

- 1 2.2))) You are a volunteer at a local hospital and you're attending a talk about some of the things visitors and patients may need help with. Listen and complete sentences 1–5 to summarize the main ideas.



- 1 Remember some people aren't able to read signs, so _____.
- 2 We need to spot people who _____.
- 3 No mobile phone use allowed on wards because _____, but it's OK _____.
- 4 Politely explain why and _____.
- 5 If you don't know, don't make it up! Always _____ or _____ to the info desk in reception.

Speaking an informal talk

- 2a Read what three people say about their greatest achievement. Think about what words and phrases might be used to complete texts A–C.

A 1 _____ my greatest challenge and achievement in recent years has been setting up my own business at the same time as juggling the commitments that go with a young family. Being your own boss sounds like a 2 _____ idea, but the reality is that it can be 3 _____ exhausting, especially when you're trying to combine it with ferrying the kids to after-school activities.



B I've been 4 _____ lucky throughout my scientific career to work with some 5 _____ great colleagues on some groundbreaking projects. My greatest achievement, though, 6 _____, would have to be the educational projects I've set up to make science more interesting for young people. If I've managed to pass on 7 _____ of my enthusiasm for my subject to the next generation of scientists, then I'll be very happy.



C When I was growing up, I was 8 _____ shy and self-conscious; I didn't like speaking in front of people. But then, while I was at university, I got involved in student politics. I'd be arguing 9 _____ with my friends about some issue or another. My proudest moment came when I addressed a rally of thousands of people protesting against government cuts. I was so 10 _____ caught up in the moment that, well, I just forgot to be nervous!



- b** 2.3))) Listen and complete texts A–C.

- c** 2.4))) Listen to eight sentences from the texts in exercise 2a and repeat.

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand and use collocations of perception and sound.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write summaries.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
give an informal talk.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

2.5 Reading for pleasure

The Open Window

- 1 Read the extract from a short story and choose the best description.
 - 1 a ghost story
 - 2 a story about a girl with a lot of imagination
 - 3 a story about a man that is scared of everything
- 2 How would you have reacted in Mr Nuttel's situation? How would you describe Mrs Sappleton's niece? What do you think the writer means by the last sentence?

The story so far

Mr. Framton Nuttel is a hypochondriac and has moved to a small village to treat his poor nerves. There, he visits Mrs. Sappleton, a friend of his sister, for the first time, but is met by her fifteen-year-old niece, who tells him about a terrible tragedy that happened on that very day three years earlier. Mrs. Sappleton's husband was killed while hunting, and she has kept the window open ever since, still waiting for his return. When Mrs. Sappleton finally comes into the room and introduces herself, Mr. Nuttel already regrets paying her a visit ...



The Open Window

'I hope you don't mind the open window,' said Mrs. Sappleton briskly; 'my husband and brothers will be home directly from shooting, and they always come in this way. They've been out for snipe in the marshes today, so they'll make a fine mess over my poor carpets. So like you menfolk, isn't it?'

She rattled on cheerfully about the shooting and the scarcity of birds, and the prospects for duck in the winter. To Framton it was all purely horrible. He made a desperate but only partially successful effort to turn the talk on to a less ghastly topic, he was conscious that his hostess was giving him only a fragment of her attention, and her eyes were constantly straying past him to the open window and the lawn beyond. It was certainly an unfortunate coincidence that he should have paid his visit on this tragic anniversary.

'The doctors agree in ordering me complete rest, an absence of mental excitement, and avoidance of anything in the nature of violent physical exercise,' announced Framton, who laboured under the tolerably widespread delusion that total strangers and chance acquaintances are hungry for the least detail of one's ailments and infirmities, their cause and cure. 'On the matter of diet they are not so much in agreement,' he continued.

'No?' said Mrs. Sappleton, in a voice which only replaced a yawn at the last moment. Then she suddenly brightened into alert attention – but not to what Framton was saying.

'Here they are at last!' she cried. 'Just in time for tea, and don't they look as if they were muddy up to the eyes!'

Framton shivered slightly and turned towards the

niece with a look intended to convey sympathetic comprehension. The child was staring out through the open window with a dazed horror in her eyes. In a chill shock of nameless fear Framton swung round in his seat and looked in the same direction.

In the deepening twilight three figures were walking across the lawn towards the window, they all carried guns under their arms, and one of them was additionally burdened with a white coat hung over his shoulders. A tired brown spaniel kept close at their heels. Noiselessly they neared the house, and then a hoarse young voice chanted out of the dusk: 'I said, Bertie, why do you bound?'

Framton grabbed wildly at his stick and hat; the hall door, the gravel drive, and the front gate were dimly noted stages in his headlong retreat. A cyclist coming along the road had to run into the hedge to avoid imminent collision.

'Here we are, my dear,' said the bearer of the white mackintosh, coming in through the window, 'fairly muddy, but most of it's dry. Who was that who bolted out as we came up?'

'A most extraordinary man, a Mr. Nuttel,' said Mrs. Sappleton; 'could only talk about his illnesses, and dashed off without a word of goodbye or apology when you arrived. One would think he had seen a ghost.'

'I expect it was the spaniel,' said the niece calmly; 'he told me he had a horror of dogs. He was once hunted into a cemetery somewhere on the banks of the Ganges by a pack of pariah dogs, and had to spend the night in a newly dug grave with the creatures snarling and grinning and foaming just above him. Enough to make anyone lose their nerve.'

Romance at short notice was her speciality.

Review: Units 1 and 2

Grammar

- 1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. There may be more than one possible answer.

- The weather wasn't as warm as we'd expected.
The weather was nowhere near as warm as we'd expected.
- The developers must consult local residents about the plans.
There must be a consultation _____.
- The store in Posnań was much less successful than the one in Wrocław.
The store _____ wasn't nearly _____.
- As the number of tourists grows, you get more and more hotels and restaurants.
The greater the number of _____, the _____.
- There were a number of problems when the new regulations were implemented.
There were a number of problems _____ the implementation _____.
- Last time I visited, the building was still being renovated.
Last time I visited, _____ was still in progress.

- 3 Match beginnings 1–6 to endings a–f.

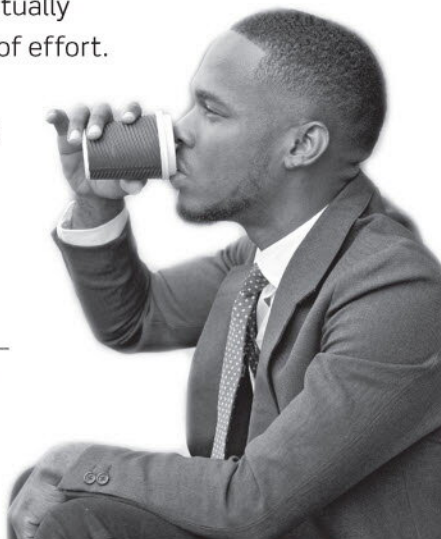
- Everyone was sitting in total _____
 - In the end, it was Stefan who came up with _____
 - At first, many of the staff resisted _____
 - When you're busy, time _____
 - We drove around a bend and I caught _____
 - Some of the companies are rather behind _____
- sight of the sea in the distance.
 - flies and the end of the day comes round very quickly.
 - silence, looking down at their mobile phones.
 - the times and are still using paper-based filing systems.
 - the changes to working practices.
 - a solution to the problem.

Vocabulary

- 2 Complete the extract with words from the box. There are some words you do not need. There may be more than one possible answer.

adapt again amazingly entails giving human implement
overcome pay person radically remarkably resist time utterly

As human beings, we're creatures of habit, we don't like change. Sometimes we find it ¹ _____ difficult to ² _____ to changes in our routine. Even a simple change, such as cutting down the amount of coffee we drink, can be hard to ³ _____. We know we should cut down and it seems so simple, but it actually ⁴ _____ a surprising amount of effort. Somehow the ⁵ _____ brain is wired for routine, it keeps sending signals telling us we want coffee and those signals feel ⁶ _____ hard to ignore. It becomes extremely difficult to ⁷ _____ the urge and we can't help but ⁸ _____ attention to what our brains are trying to tell us. So time and ⁹ _____, despite our best intentions, we give in and have that coffee after all.



Speaking

- 4 Complete the sentences with a phrase from the box to make them more vague.

a bit a few I suppose or so
somewhere in the region of ~~up to~~

- When you apply for a new passport, it can take up to six weeks to arrive.
- I admit I was _____ nervous the first time I had to speak in front of an audience.
- I've been working as a nurse for fifteen years _____ now.
- Apparently, _____ 150 people turned up for the free concert in the park.
- We had _____ minor problems at the start, but things are running smoothly now.
- _____ this is quite an important step forward for me in my career.

3.1 The perfect team

Vocabulary behaviour and attitude

- 1 Complete the profiles with the correct form of words from the box. There are four words you do not need.

big boost centre do get high make open see sit stand view



Nor is the head of department. Since she took over six months ago, she's implemented a number of measures to ¹ _____ employee morale. A positive attitude and good teamworking are really important to her. She has very ² _____ expectations of herself and everyone around her. So she's encouraged each of her team to choose one area in which they want to develop their skills and is supporting them in doing so. Also, as a manager, she's always willing to get involved and to ³ _____ her hands dirty.



Liza is very good with details, she's always the one to spot the errors in a document or to pick out the potential flaws in a plan. But she has the ability to ⁴ _____ the 'big picture' too and she often comes up with some really innovative ideas. She's very experienced in her role, but she's still always ⁵ _____ to new ideas. She's really embraced the skills development programme that Nor put in place.



Nala's the newest and youngest member of the team and he's full of energy. He likes to be the ⁶ _____ of attention and he's never shy about expressing his opinions. If something's up for discussion, you can guarantee he won't be the one ⁷ _____ on the fence. He's good fun to have around, but he can be a bit of a ⁸trouble _____ sometimes. If he's going to be an effective member of the team, he's going to have to settle down a bit.

- 2a Complete the questions using the phrases from exercise 1 in the correct form.

- 1 Are you fixed in your ways or are you _____?
- 2 Do you prefer to work behind the scenes or do you like _____?
- 3 Do you tend to take sides in a discussion or do you _____?
- 4 Are you good at focusing on the details or are you better at _____?
- 5 Do your managers stand back and let your team get on with it or do they prefer to _____?
- 6 Do you _____ of yourself or do you just do the minimum necessary?
- 7 Do you try to fit in with others or can you be _____?
- 8 When things aren't going well, are you the one complaining or do you try to _____?

- b Match questions 1–8 in exercise 2a to answers a–h.

- a _____ They think it's important to get involved.
- b _____ I prefer to try to help keep a positive atmosphere at times like that.
- c _____ I think I'm quite good at seeing things from a wider perspective.
- d _____ I'm fairly shy, so I'm happiest just getting on with work at my desk.
- e _____ Let's just say I always make my opinions quite clear.
- f _____ Of course, you always want to do your best, don't you?
- g 1 I love learning new skills, that's the best part of the job.
- h _____ I'd say I'm pretty chilled out so I generally get on fine with everyone.

Grammar auxiliary verbs

- 3 Read about team building and complete the participants' comments with an auxiliary verb from the box. You can use each verb more than once.

am did didn't do don't had were



team-building: a series of activities that are designed to boost morale and encourage better cooperation in a team of people. The activities are not directly connected to the team's normal work and are often fun, physical challenges that involve working together to achieve a goal.

- Some people make fun of the idea of team-building activities, but in fact, they _____ bring a lot of real benefits.
- I was a bit sceptical about the whole idea before our first team-building day and so _____ many of my colleagues.
- None of the others had been on a team-building day before, but I _____, so I knew what to expect.
- I thought I'd feel silly doing some of the tasks, but actually, once we got started, I _____ at all.
- You soon find that if everyone else is throwing themselves into something, then so _____ you.
- We were set some tasks that I didn't think we'd manage, but actually we _____ in the end, and it was really satisfying.
- If you want to get the best from a team-building activity, you _____ have to approach it with enthusiasm.
- Sometimes, you think you're going to look ridiculous, but you _____ because everyone's in the same position.
- I didn't think I was a very good team player, but by the end of the day, I realized I _____. I'm actually very good at helping others reach agreement.
- My advice for making the most out of the day? _____ go into every activity with an open mind, even if it initially seems a bit silly.

- 4a Complete the conversations using an auxiliary verb form and any other necessary words.

- A Have you asked Tim about the schedule for Friday?
B Yes, I have. It's all sorted.
- A I haven't heard anything from the organizers yet about the workshop.
B No, neither _____.
- A You weren't listening, were you?
B Yes, _____ - I heard everything he said.
- A Are you free for a meeting at ten o'clock on Wednesday?
B Yes, I think _____. I'll check my diary, though.
- A I'm not sure the sales team are going to like my ideas.
B _____ - don't worry.
- A Are the brochures ready? We really _____ need to send them out by the end of the week.
B Yes, I know. Don't worry, they'll be back from the printers tomorrow.
- A I'm going to be working again this weekend.
B Yes, so _____. It's always a busy time of year.
- A I'm not sure whether to go on the trip to the funfair at the weekend. It's not really my thing.
B _____ come along - it'll be fun!



- b 3.1))) Listen and check your answers.

PRONUNCIATION auxiliary verbs

- c 3.2))) Listen and repeat the phrases from exercise 4a.

I can ...

talk about behaviour and attitude.
use auxiliary verbs.

Very well Quite well More practice

<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

3.2 Team game

Grammar articles

- 1a Circle the correct options in italics to complete the descriptions (- = no article).



In India, ¹ - / *the* cricket is the national sport. When you're ² *a* / *the* kid, you play cricket in the street and at ³ - / *the* school, and everyone wants to be on the cricket team. When India are playing ⁴ *a* / *the* big international match, the streets are empty because everyone's gathered round the TV watching ⁵ *a* / *the* game.



The New Zealand rugby team, the All Blacks, are undoubtedly ⁶ *a* / *the* best team in the world. You can't beat ⁷ - / *the* excitement of going to ⁸ *a* / *the* live match. The fans arrive at ⁹ *a* / *the* stadium dressed in the team's all black shirts with the white fern emblem. Then before ¹⁰ *a* / *the* match starts, the team lines up facing ¹¹ - / *the* opposition in the middle of the pitch for the *haka*: ¹² *a* / - traditional Maori war dance that's designed to intimidate their opponents.

- b 3.3))) Listen and check your answers.

- 2 Complete the magazine article using *a, an, the* or - (no article).

The sports fan

There are four different types of ¹ ___ sports fan. Which one are you?

² ___ **player** is someone who loves taking part in ³ ___ sport. They exercise regularly, they go to ⁴ ___ gym, or they play for ⁵ ___ team, be that football or basketball or whatever. They often love ⁶ ___ physicality of sport and they enjoy being part of ⁷ ___ team.



⁸ ___ **ex-player** used to be sporty when they were at ⁹ ___ college and they still think of themselves as ¹⁰ ___ sportsperson. Nowadays though, they probably only actually take part in sport once ¹¹ ___ week - they go for ¹² ___ run on a Sunday morning or they play five-a-side football in ¹³ ___ team with their mates.

¹⁴ ___ **loyal supporter** has followed ¹⁵ ___ particular team for many years, often all their life. They go to all the matches, they know ¹⁶ ___ players and they always buy the latest replica kit. If they can't go to ¹⁷ ___ game, they'll be following it closely on TV or online, living every moment as if they were there.



¹⁸ ___ **armchair fan** rarely actually goes to a match. Instead, they watch on TV from ¹⁹ ___ comfort of their armchair. Armchair fans often enjoy a number of ²⁰ ___ sports, but don't follow any of them regularly. They tend to watch ²¹ ___ big games so they can give their expert opinion to the guys in ²² ___ office on Monday morning.



Vocabulary success and failure

3 Match beginnings 1–12 to endings a–l.

- 1 As a coach, he was a complete flop c
- 2 The early-morning training sessions finally paid ____
- 3 There seems to have been a breakdown ____
- 4 After several injury setbacks, he finally had to give ____
- 5 In 2014, he overcame ____
- 6 Only a handful of these youngsters will make ____
- 7 The London Olympics turned ____
- 8 His relationship with the new coach didn't work ____
- 9 If you want to do ____
- 10 If a complicated dive doesn't come ____
- 11 It's taken me many years to get ____
- 12 Eventually, the match officials succeeded ____

- a in and retired from the sport aged just twenty-six.
- b well in any sport, you have to train hard.
- c and he was sacked after just six months.
- d out to be his last tournament, as he retired the following year.
- e in getting the match restarted.
- f off, you can lose a lot of marks.
- g a serious knee injury to compete in the World Championships.
- h it as professional tennis players.
- i out and they split just a few months later.
- j to the top of my sport.
- k in relations between the players and the management team.
- l off when she made the national team.

➔ **STUDY TIP** Always think about the style or register of new words or phrases. Use a dictionary and make a note of any that are generally used in informal or conversational contexts.

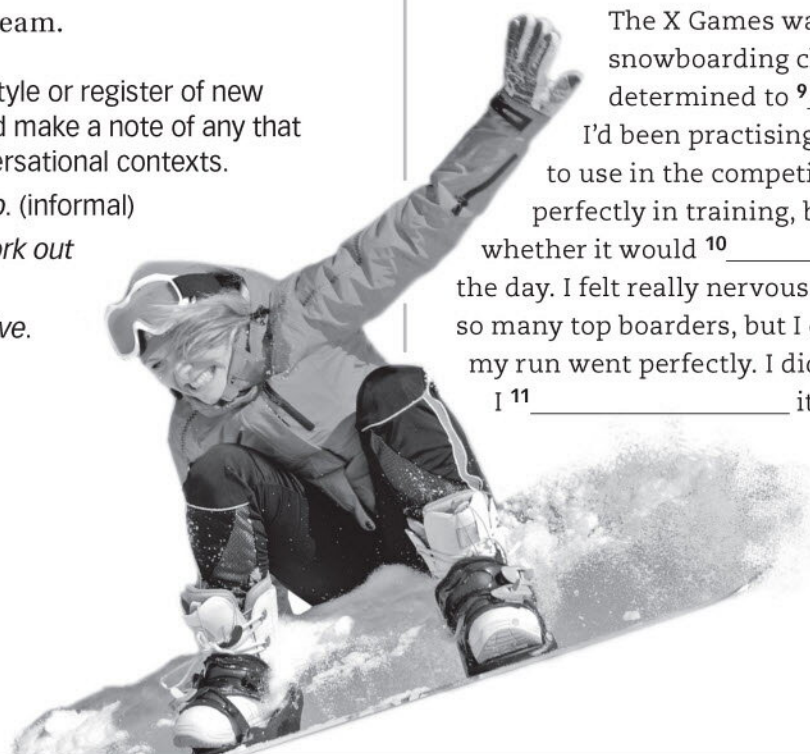
- The whole thing was a complete *flop*. (informal)
- Unfortunately, the scheme *didn't work out* as planned. (neutral)
- Overall, the scheme proved *ineffective*. (more formal)

4 Complete the anecdotes using words from exercise 3. Some words are used more than once.

When I was about thirteen, a top long-distance runner came to talk at my school. He told us about all the obstacles he'd had to ¹ _____ in order to ² _____ to the top in his sport. He didn't have proper running shoes and there was no coach in the small village where he grew up. He didn't ³ _____ in though, and went out training early every morning before school. He talked about how his commitment and persistence ⁴ _____ off when he won the regional trials and got picked up by the national development team. I found his story really inspiring and I often think back to it when I'm finding something difficult. He never gave up hope and I try to be just as positive.

Recently, I organized a five-a-side football competition where I work. I thought it would be fun and lots of people were keen to join in. Initially, everything seemed to be ⁵ _____ out OK. Plenty of people had signed up and I'd arranged a venue. Somehow though, there was a bit of a ⁶ _____ in communications and it ⁷ _____ out that the pitch had been double-booked. It meant I had to change the date at the last minute and lots of people couldn't ⁸ _____ it after all. In the end, not that many people turned up, but we still had lots of fun. I'll definitely try and do it again.

The X Games was my first major snowboarding championship and I was determined to ⁹ _____ well. I'd been practising a new trick that I wanted to use in the competition. I'd been landing it perfectly in training, but I was worried about whether it would ¹⁰ _____ off on the day. I felt really nervous about competing with so many top boarders, but I overcame my nerves and my run went perfectly. I didn't win or anything, but I ¹¹ _____ it into the top twenty, which for me was a real achievement!



I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

use articles.

☐
☐
☐

talk about success and failure.

☐
☐
☐

3.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary prepositional phrases

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.



- 1 I'm _____ two minds about what to do.
- 2 I haven't got much cash. I went to the cash machine, but it was _____ of order.
- 3 I think you should let them know you're OK, _____ the very least.
- 4 Sam was _____ the impression you were leaving next week.
- 5 _____ times I really wonder whether I'm in the right job.
- 6 Our CEO turned up _____ warning and everyone went into a bit of a panic.
- 7 I'm sure Zuzana will have updated the schedule, as she's usually pretty _____ the ball.
- 8 We're all _____ a loss as to what to get Jimmy as a leaving present. Any ideas?
- 9 The software selects images _____ random from a database of pictures.
- 10 _____ the most part, I'm based in the office. I only visit clients very occasionally.

Vocabulary extension

- ➔ **STUDY TIP** Prepositional phrases typically appear in the dictionary at the entry for the noun (or adjective), rather than the preposition. So you will find *out of order* at the entry for *order*.

Some prepositional phrases have more than one meaning. So if a phrase doesn't seem to fit in context, check it in the dictionary.

- The printer's *out of order*. (= not working)
- Some of these pages are *out of order*. (= not arranged correctly)
- Dave's comments were really *out of order*. (= not acceptable behaviour; informal)

- 2 Choose the correct meaning of the underlined prepositional phrases.

a immediately b at the same time

- 1 The children were very excited and all talking at once. ____
- 2 Report any injuries or accidents to management at once. ____

a one after the other b as a result in a series of events

- 3 We'll go round each person in turn and ask you to introduce yourself. ____
- 4 Poor communication causes misunderstandings, which in turn can lead to a negative atmosphere and low morale. ____

a used to introduce the first and often most important point
b at the beginning

- 5 I was quite nervous about speaking in front of people to start with, but now I'm a more confident presenter. ____
- 6 There are a number of issues here. To start with, the deadlines are very tight. ____

a in addition to
b physically on or covering something else
c in control or up-to-date with a situation

- 7 The boxes can easily be stacked on top of each other. ____
- 8 I don't have the time for extra training on top of all my other work. ____
- 9 We need to make sure we're on top of the latest regulations before the inspection. ____

3.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking checking and rephrasing

- 1a 3.4))) Listen to a meeting about how a large independent department store delivers products to customers and complete the extracts.



- 1 Sorry, what did _____ you said departments are using different delivery options?
- 2 What _____ some departments are sending things out using regular mail ...
- 3 Sorry, I didn't _____ last part.
- 4 What _____, as a company, we need to find the best way to organize all our deliveries.
- 5 Are you _____?
- 6 So _____ you'd like us all to use the same courier company?
- 7 Sorry, I don't _____.
- 8 I'll _____. If we can find one supplier ...
- 9 _____, each department will still have the final say.

- b Replace sentences 1-3 with three phrases from the conversation.

- 1 Do you follow? _____
- 2 Let me rephrase that. _____
- 3 What was that again? _____

Writing a proposal

- 2a Choose the most appropriate phrases to complete the extracts from a proposal to attract more fans to a local basketball club.
- a The *purpose / reason* of this proposal is to recommend ways that the club can attract new supporters to its games.
 - b The *below / following* ideas were put forward to make the club more attractive to new supporters.
 - c A range of stakeholders, including club staff, players, supporters and members of the wider community *were asked / were commissioned* to take part in a series of focus group meetings.
 - d Having considered all the options, we recommend *to introduce / introducing* a wider range of ticket prices to appeal to different groups.
 - e *It is clear from / It is stated in* the feedback that, while existing supporters attend matches regularly, more needs to be done to attract families and younger fans.
 - f More community engagement. Players could visit local schools to take part in basketball training sessions. *That kind of / Such a* programme would not only benefit young people in the area, but help to attract younger fans to games.
 - g The proposal *is requested / was commissioned* by the club's management board as a result of falling ticket sales.
 - h The resulting losses from introducing reduced price tickets for some groups would be *outweighed / rectified* by the increase in overall sales.
 - i Special ticket offers. These *could include / consist of* reduced ticket prices for under sixteens and special family tickets.

- b Match the extracts a-i in exercise 2a to the headings 1-4. More than one extract may go under the same heading.

- 1 The purpose of the proposal _____ a _____
- 2 Background to the report _____
- 3 Proposals from stakeholders _____
- 4 Recommendations _____

- c Put the extracts a-i in exercise 2a into a logical order.

- 1 a 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____ 6 _____ 7 _____ 8 _____ 9 _____

I can ...

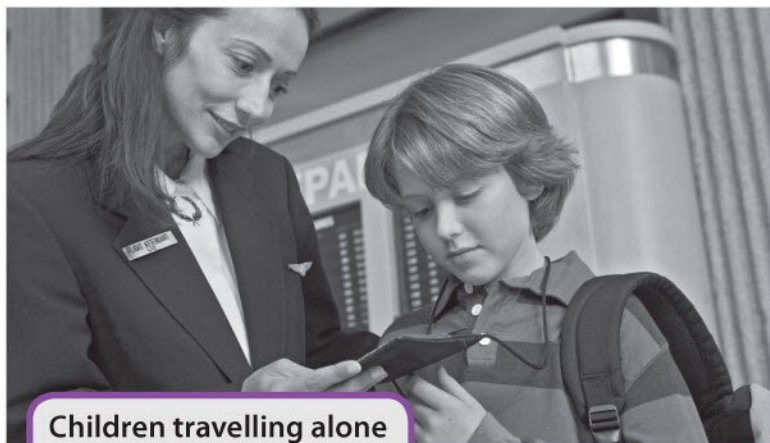
	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use prepositional phrases.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
check and rephrase.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write a proposal.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

Responsibility

4.1 Age of responsibility

Grammar degrees of obligation

- 1a Choose the correct phrase in italics to complete the advice about children flying alone.



Children travelling alone

The rules around children travelling alone vary from airline to airline, so ¹ *you need to / you're supposed to* check with the individual airline when you book your tickets. Most airlines offer a special service for unaccompanied children which generally ² *has to / must* be arranged at the time of booking.

- Most airlines ³ *don't need / don't allow* children under the age of five to travel without an adult.
- Children aged 5–12 ⁴ *can / had better* usually travel using the airline's unaccompanied children arrangements. In most cases, airline policy states that an adult ⁵ *must / ought to* take the child to check-in, and it may also ⁶ *be needed / be necessary* for them to wait at the airport until the flight has departed.
- For teenagers, the picture is less clear. On most airlines, ⁷ *it's compulsory / it isn't compulsory* to make special arrangements for children aged 12–16, it's up to the individual family.

If you're in any doubt about your child travelling alone, ⁸ *you'd better / you should* check with your airline for advice.

- b Complete the sentences so they are correct according to the information in exercise 1a.

- 1 Children under the age of five _____.
- 2 Airlines _____ children aged 5–12 to travel alone.
- 3 Parents of children may _____.
- 4 Children aged 12–16 _____.

- 2 4.1 » Listen to a briefing for airline staff about their unaccompanied children service. Label each point C (compulsory), A (advisable) or N (not necessary).

- 1 Introduce yourself to the child and their parents at check-in. _____
- 2 Give your full name. _____
- 3 Parents wait at check-in until departure. _____
- 4 Check the child's passport and documents at check-in. _____
- 5 Stay with the child during security checks. _____
- 6 Sit with the child at the departure gate. _____
- 7 Take the child to their seat on the plane. _____
- 8 Reassure the child before leaving the plane. _____

- 3 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 Under-sixteens should be monitored by cabin staff. (suppose)

- 2 You should check whether the hotel allows children under five. (better)

- 3 There are no age restrictions, so parents can decide whether the course is suitable for their children. (up to)

- 4 We don't let our children use the internet unsupervised. (allow)

- 5 In most countries, you don't qualify to vote in elections until you reach eighteen. (can't)

- 6 In many schools, children have to wear a uniform up to the age of sixteen. (compulsory)

- 7 Students over sixteen can go on school trips without their parents' permission. (need)

- 8 You don't need to book a separate seat for under-fives. (necessary)

Vocabulary responsibility

4 Match beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h.

- 1 Has anyone owned ____
- 2 Who's in ____
- 3 I was counting ____
- 4 My team's responsible ____
- 5 I'll take care ____
- 6 You're not to blame ____
- 7 People's memories aren't always ____
- 8 Local people hold the mining company ____

- a for all the artwork in the catalogue.
- b up to breaking the window?
- c reliable when it comes to the exact details.
- d of the flights, if you can book a hotel.
- e for what happened – it wasn't your fault.
- f responsible for the river pollution.
- g on them, but they let me down.
- h charge of security for the event?

5 Complete the comments using the correct form of the words from the box.

blame charge count hold own reliable
responsible take

A youth group leader has to be someone who's
1 _____. They're 2 _____

for both running the programme efficiently and
ensuring the children's well-being. The parents
are 3 _____ on them to make sure
nothing goes wrong.

As group leader, I'm basically in 4 _____
of everything at the camp. I organize the programme of
activities, but I also have to 5 _____ care of
practical arrangements like catering and accommodation.

Kids will be kids, and inevitably things get damaged and broken.
I always try to find out who's to 6 _____ but often
I'm met with silence, as no one wants to tell on their friends.
So, if no one 7 _____ up, then the entire group
is 8 _____ responsible for any damage.

6 Rewrite the sentences using words and phrases from the box. You may use each one more than once. There may be more than one possible answer.

blame charge count own up reliable responsible
take care

- 1 We need a business partner we can rely on to help us expand the company.

- 2 Charlie Coleman runs the day-to-day operations in New York.

- 3 We want to recruit someone to deal with customer queries and complaints.

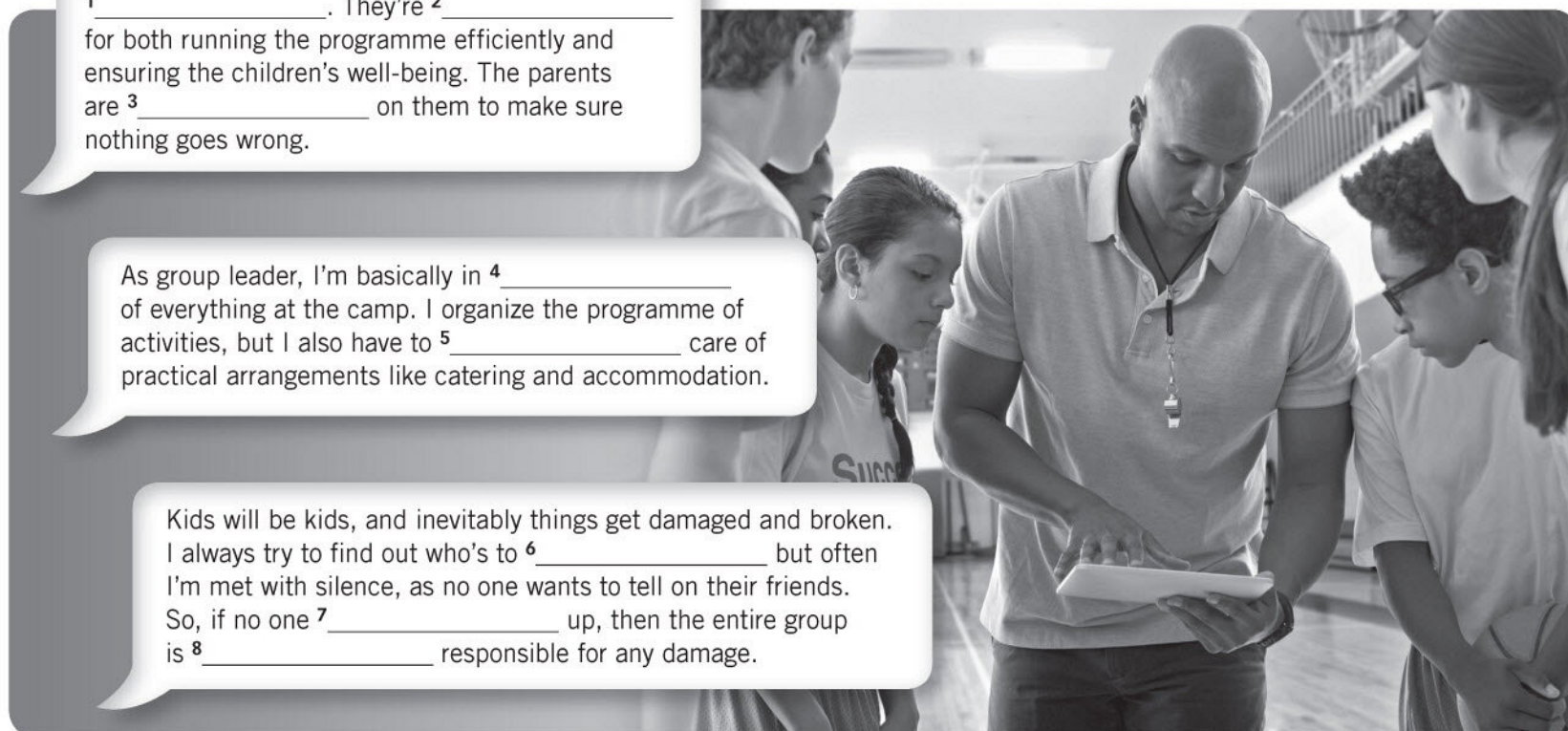
- 4 The success of the project is directly down to us.

- 5 One of the boys finally admitted that he'd posted the comments.

- 6 I'm sure we can trust Abi to sort everything out for us.

- 7 In around 70% of road accidents involving cyclists, the motorist is at fault.

- 8 Can a ten-year-old child really be thought of as being accountable for their actions?



I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

express degrees of obligation.

☐ ☐ ☐

talk about responsibility.

☐ ☐ ☐

4.2 The caring generation

Vocabulary phrases with *care*

- 1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

a care in the world carefree careless carer caring
handle with care health care take care

- _____ – the roads are icy this morning.
- I wish I could be as _____ as she is, but I tend to worry about things.
- It arrived in a box with orange, fragile _____ stickers on the outside.
- Access to clean water, education and affordable _____ are vital for development.
- You need to check your answers when you finish, to avoid _____ mistakes.
- Paul is severely disabled and needs a _____ to help him wash and dress in the morning.
- This workshop on dealing with people with dementia is relevant to people in the _____ professions.
- As kids, we ran around in the woods without _____.

- 2a Match the words with *care* 1–5 to the sets of collocations a–e.

- | | | |
|---------------|----------|----------------------------------|
| 1 carefree | <u>b</u> | a role, professions |
| 2 careless | _____ | b lifestyle, attitude, existence |
| 3 caring | _____ | c centre, provider |
| 4 daycare | _____ | d mistake, driving, remark |
| 5 health care | _____ | e system, professional |

- b Match phrases from exercise 2a to descriptions 1–5.

- having no stresses, worries or responsibilities
a carefree lifestyle
- a dentist, paramedic, surgeon or hospital administrator

- a place where children or older people can go during the day

- looking after young children or an elderly or disabled relative

- something you said by accident that upset someone

- 3 Complete the voters' replies using a word or phrase that includes *care*.

'What issues are important to you in the forthcoming election?'

- 1 The cost of living's important to me. I'm a _____, I'm looking after my elderly parents and I can only work part time.

- 2 Childcare costs. I've got two young children who go to a _____ centre and it's really expensive.

- 3 I _____
– I'm not interested in politics.

- 4 I'm worried about the aging population and how we're going to _____ the increasing number of older people in society.

- 5 For me, _____ is the biggest issue. I'm a nurse in the local hospital and we've suffered from cuts in funding for years now.

- 6 I want to hear what the politicians have to say about public sector pay. At the moment, nurses and social workers and others in the _____ are really underpaid.



Grammar passives

4a Read texts 1–3 and decide which one is

- a an academic article ____
- b a report about uncertainties ____
- c a set of rules. ____

1 Passengers are not permitted to speak to or distract the driver whilst the coach is in motion. Customers using mobile phones are kindly asked to keep their conversations as short as possible. A toilet can be found to the rear of the vehicle.

2 To date, little in-depth research has been carried out into the lives of young carers; that is, children who help to look after a sick or disabled relative. It is estimated that there are around 180,000 young carers in the UK. However, little is understood about the potential effects of such caring responsibilities on the education and social development of these young people.

3 The questionnaire was tested in the UK and translated into French and Spanish to ensure questions were consistent between languages. British, French and Spanish researchers were recruited and trained to administer the questionnaire. Data collection took place during the peak summer tourist period. Participants were given a questionnaire to complete and return in a sealed envelope.

- b Underline examples of passive verb forms in each text in exercise 4a.
- c Identify the purpose of each passive used in the texts in exercise 4a. There may be more than one possible answer.
 - a To focus on the action, not the person who did it.
 - b To create an impersonal, objective style.
 - c To make rules seem less personally directed.
 - d To report facts that are not certain.
 - e To describe an action that happens by accident or unexpectedly.

5a Complete the sentences using a passive form of the verb(s) in brackets.

- 1 Smallpox is believed to have arrived in the USA with early European colonizers in the 1600s. (believe / arrive)
- 2 Dogs _____ on the beach during the summer period. (not allow)
- 3 The survey reveals that only one-third of elderly people who live alone _____ on a daily basis. (visit)
- 4 A lot of services focus on the disabled person and often the needs of the carer _____. (get / forget)
- 5 The results _____ by two independent observers who both found high levels of pollution. (analyse)
- 6 The first Barnardo's home for boys _____ in 1867. (establish)
- 7 Many of her childhood photos _____ during the fire. (get / damage)
- 8 The company _____ its procedures since the incident. (understand / change)

PRONUNCIATION passive forms

b 4.2))) Listen, check and repeat.

c Match the passives in sentences 1–8 in exercise 5a to the purposes a–e in exercise 4c. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____ 4 ____ 5 ____ 6 ____ 7 ____ 8 ____

6 Rewrite the sentences using a passive verb form.

- 1 We interviewed 150 patients about their experience at the hospital.

- 2 Architects are designing the facilities to maximize accessibility for disabled students.

- 3 The government intends to attract more young people to the caring professions with this new scheme.

- 4 Researchers excluded people outside the target age group from the study.

- 5 Nurses check on patients at least once every hour.

- 6 Lenny's family have been caring for him at home for the past ten years.

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use phrases with <i>care</i> .	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use passives.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

4.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary connotation

1a Are the sentences largely positive (P) or negative (N) in tone?

- 1 The hotel is set in a peaceful village surrounded by rolling countryside. P
- 2 The restaurant serves simple, home-cooked dishes, using fresh local ingredients. ____
- 3 He was being far too nosy, so I told him to mind his own business. ____
- 4 Her daughter is tall and slim, and always wears a pair of bright red glasses. ____
- 5 The shelves are stacked with cheap, disposable, mass-produced goods. ____
- 6 They were attracted to Australia looking for a relaxed, carefree lifestyle. ____
- 7 The economy is not helped by the overcautious approach to lending by the banks. ____
- 8 We want to get the message across that reckless behaviour can have serious consequences. ____

b Match words or phrases from exercise 1a to the words that have a similar meaning but different connotation.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|-------|
| 1 adventurous | <u>reckless</u> | 5 dull | _____ |
| 2 bland | _____ | 6 frivolous | _____ |
| 3 careful | _____ | 7 skinny | _____ |
| 4 curious | _____ | 8 low-cost | _____ |

2 Choose the correct words in italics to complete the sentences.

- 1 This is a *challenging* / *difficult* position with potential for career growth.
- 2 The number of business travellers using *low-cost* / *cheap* airlines has increased.
- 3 Chimps are naturally playful and *curious* / *nosy* animals.
- 4 Her son, Seb, was severely *skinny* / *underweight* at birth.
- 5 Resources are wasted dealing with *carefree* / *frivolous* complaints.
- 6 Patients complain that hospital food is *bland* / *simple* and tasteless.
- 7 For our more *adventurous* / *reckless* guests, there's a two-hour hike through the cloud forest.
- 8 She felt that her life had become *dull* / *quiet* and boring.

➔ **STUDY TIP** Learner's dictionaries label words that have strong connotations. Look out for labels such as *approving*, *disapproving*, *humorous* and *offensive*.

- slim (approving)
- frivolous (disapproving)
- other half (informal, humorous) the person you are married to, or your boyfriend or girlfriend
- cripple (old-fashioned or offensive) a person who is unable to walk normally because of a disease or injury

Vocabulary extension

3a Match the words and phrases in italics in sentences 1–8 to definitions a–h.

- 1 I've been off work all week with *the lurgy*. c
- 2 It's difficult to know what he's really thinking behind that *fake* smile. ____
- 3 People often don't fully understand the legal *jargon* used in contracts. ____
- 4 It's a romantic comedy about the *trials and tribulations* of online dating. ____
- 5 He's always been very *modest* about his charity work. ____
- 6 People have been spreading *gossip* behind her back. ____
- 7 Back in the day, everything was on hard copy and sent by *snail mail*. ____
- 8 The team has developed a *novel* approach to treating heart disease. ____

- a difficulties
- b not genuine
- c a mild illness
- d not talking much about your own abilities and achievements
- e language used by a particular group or profession which is difficult for others to understand
- f letters sent by ordinary post, not electronically
- g new and different from anything tried before
- h talk or stories about someone that may or may not be true

b Put the words in italics in exercise 3a into the correct category.

approving _____
disapproving _____
humorous 1

4.4 Writing and speaking

Writing a balanced argument essay

- 1 Complete the extracts from a balanced argument essay with phrases from the box.

another drawback of consequently could result in
furthermore those against those in favour of
we also need to consider while

In recent years, stricter laws have been introduced in many countries, making businesses responsible for unethical conduct, such as bribery, right across their operations globally. Is it reasonable, though, to expect a multinational company to keep control of everything that goes on in all its operations and subsidiaries worldwide?

1 _____ this type of legislation argue that it is the only way to ensure that companies operate ethical business practices throughout their operation ...

2 _____, they point out that tough regulations in a company's home country can help police malpractice in other countries where local laws do not sufficiently protect against abuses ...

However, 3 _____ we might all agree that clamping down on unethical business practices is broadly a good thing, 4 _____ the practical implications of such strict controls. 5 _____ this type of legislation say that expecting a business to be responsible for all its operations, including contractors and local agents, is just impractical and 6 _____ businesses being prosecuted for offences that they had no knowledge of ...

7 _____ this approach is that big multi-nationals might be discouraged from using small local contractors and suppliers, because they are more difficult to monitor. 8 _____, local businesses in some areas could miss out on lucrative contracts ...

- 2 Complete the conclusion of the essay using the prompts in brackets. Add any other necessary words.

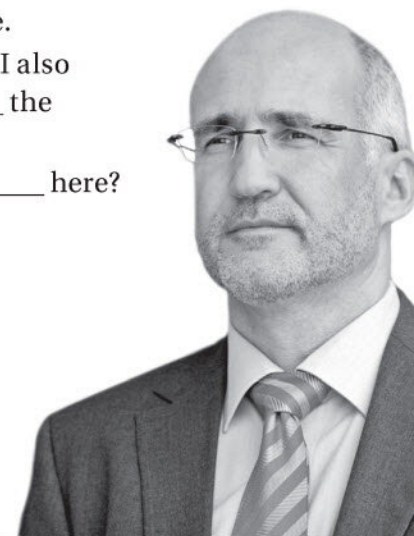
1 _____ (conclusion / it / seem) there are a number of practical difficulties that surround this type of legislation. 2 _____ (balance / though), while there are clearly practical obstacles to be overcome in implementing such laws fairly and effectively, 3 _____ (it / nevertheless / also / true / say) controls are needed to clamp down on unethical business practices wherever they occur, and imposing such strict liability on big businesses is probably 4 _____ (whole) the most effective approach in a globalized business environment.

Speaking formal negotiations

- 3a Complete the extracts from a conversation between a property developer and local residents using verbs from the box. Add any other necessary words.

accept come in have look mean put work

- 1 It says in the proposals that work will take place within 'normal working hours' – what exactly _____ by that?
- 2 But I'm not sure we can _____ that. It's going to be incredibly disruptive.
- 3 I do understand your concerns, but I also think we need _____ the bigger picture here.
- 4 Perhaps if I could _____ here?
- 5 I can see both sides of this, but do _____ any room for compromise?
- 6 Well, I could _____ them and see what they think.
- 7 Thanks, that might _____ a bit better for us.



- b 4.3))) Listen to the whole conversation and check your answers.

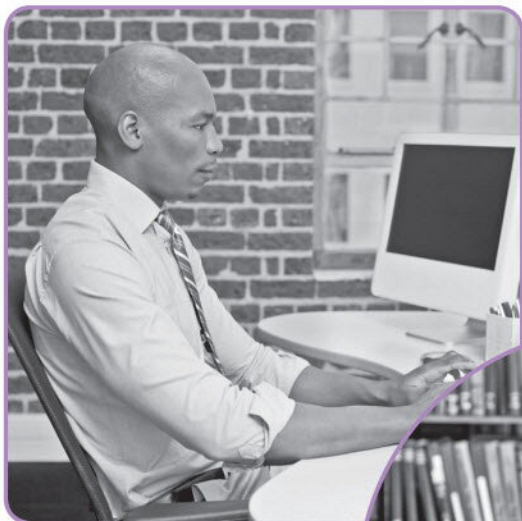
I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand and use connotation.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write a balanced argument essay.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
take part in formal negotiations.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

4.5 Listening for pleasure

Sitting is ...

- 1 How many hours do you spend sitting down each day?
What kind of problems do you think this might cause?



- 2 4.4 » Listen to a health expert speaking about the dangers of sitting and what can be done about it. Choose the option which best describes the talk.

- 1 A presentation at a medical conference
- 2 An in-company talk
- 3 A college lecture

- 3 4.4 » Listen again and complete the notes. Use one word in each gap.

Sitting = serious ¹ _____ *risk*

Consequences of sitting:

- *strain on* ² _____
- *DVT*
- *less oxygen to* ³ _____
- *cancer*
- ⁴ _____ *disease*

'We're sitting ourselves to ⁵ _____ *'*

Plane:

- *move feet in* ⁶ _____ *+ massage legs*
- *drink lots of* ⁷ _____

Work:

- ⁸ _____ *away from entrance*
- *place phone +* ⁹ _____ *far from desk*
- *walking* ¹⁰ _____ *are more*
- ¹¹ _____

'Sitting is the new ¹² _____ *'*

- 4 Which of these suggestions could you adopt? What else can you do?

- Park further away from your place of work/study.
- Keep things you use regularly in a place you can't reach from where you're sitting.
- Have meetings and discussions while walking.

Review: Units 3 and 4

Grammar

- 1 Choose two possible endings a–h to complete each sentence.
- This area is for airport staff only. Members of the public _____
 - My friends are always telling me that I work too hard and _____
 - Most people book their next session in advance, but _____
 - If you explain the problem and ask them to exchange the item, _____
- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a I suppose I do. | e I'm sure they will do. |
| b I think they should. | f I guess they're right. |
| c aren't supposed to be in here. | g it's up to you really. |
| d it's not compulsory. | h shouldn't be allowed in. |
- 2 Add one missing article *a*, *an* or *the* to each sentence.
- Students attend twelve hours of lectures ^a/week.
 - I bought really nice pair of new shoes yesterday.
 - What did you think of painting of Nelson Mandela?
 - I read interesting book about artificial intelligence recently.
 - Who was guy talking to Vlatka earlier?
 - You should always read terms and conditions before you sign anything.

Vocabulary

- 3 Choose the correct word or phrase in italics to complete sentences 1–8.
- Everyone was *at random* / *at a loss* to explain how the accident had happened, as there seemed to be no obvious explanation.
 - Crowds of families with young children were enjoying the sunshine in the park. It was as if they *couldn't care less* / *were without a care in the world*.
 - We were told that technical problems were *in charge of* / *to blame for* the delays.
 - Due to his dyslexia, Luke had to *count on* / *overcome* enormous difficulties to make it in the movie world.
 - All their hard work *paid off* / *came off* when the department was awarded the contract.
 - Young children are naturally *nosy* / *curious* and eager to find out about the world around them.
 - The group leader's actions were found to be *reckless* / *adventurous*, as he'd put everyone at unnecessary risk.
 - Martha was telling me the other day that Lucas *prospered* / *did really well* in his exams. She's so very proud of him.

- 4 Complete sentences 1–6 using a preposition.

- It's just another example of a politician sitting _____ the fence, not willing to commit to a firm position.
- We were _____ the impression that breakfast was included in the price, but apparently, it's not.
- It was only later that Sasha's daughter owned _____ to having scratched the car when she was putting her bike away.
- The paintings are very delicate so they need to be handled _____ great care.
- We haven't been keeping attendance records, but from now _____, they are a legal requirement.
- Why don't you suggest it? The new manager seems to be very open _____ new ideas.

Speaking

- 5 Complete the comments using an appropriate verb. There may be more than one possible answer.
- Sorry, I didn't quite _____ what you said. What was the company called again?
 - So, which option would you prefer? I'm keen to _____ to a decision on this today.
 - Let me _____ it another way – each person has to complete an application form.
 - Could you _____ on that a little? Exactly where and when do you think this will take place?
 - Sorry, I don't quite _____ you. Do you mean that we all need to register first?
 - Of course all those things are important, but I think we have to _____ at the bigger picture here.

5.1 Who holds the power?

Grammar relative clauses

1a Read the text and match the terms 1–3 to the groups of people a–c. Ignore the gaps in the text.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 the Three Estates | a bloggers |
| 2 the Fourth Estate | b members of the government |
| 3 the Fifth Estate | c the media |

The Fifth Estate

Traditionally, the term *the Fourth Estate* has referred to the media, especially the press, ¹ _____ is seen to have a significant influence on the politics of many countries. It's a term ² _____ is thought to have been used by Edmund Burke in the British Parliament in 1787. The 'Three Estates' were the clergy, the nobility and the commoners, or ordinary elected MPs, ³ _____ together controlled the government. Burke described the press, members ⁴ _____ had just been allowed to report from the House of Commons, as a new power ⁵ _____ could prove more important than all the others. It's a prediction ⁶ _____ has arguably proved to be more than true not just in the UK, but across the world, over the past couple of hundred years.

In recent years, however, social commentators have written about the way ⁷ _____ other groups have become just as influential as the mainstream media. In an age ⁸ _____ almost anyone ⁹ _____ has an internet connection can have their voice heard via blogs or social media, ordinary citizens can potentially contribute to political change. These individuals, ¹⁰ _____ are now reaching many millions of readers, have collectively been labelled as *the Fifth Estate*.

- **the clergy** the priests or ministers of a religion, especially of the Christian Church
- **the nobility** people of high social position with titles such as *lord* or *duke*
- **commoners** ordinary people who are not part of the nobility. They can be elevated to sit in the House of Commons.

b Complete the text in exercise 1a using words and phrases from the box. You may use each one more than once.

in which of which when which who

c Which of the relative pronouns in exercise 1b can be omitted

- 1 without changing the text? _____
- 2 by making minor changes to the text? _____

2 Complete each comment 1–8 in as many different ways as possible. Use a dash (–) to show that a gap can also be left blank.

- 1 At one time, the newspaper which/that/– a person read indicated fairly reliably who they would vote for.
- 2 Throughout the 20th century, newspapers largely reflected the political views of the media organizations _____ owned them.
- 3 By and large, the most successful political leaders are the ones _____ know how to play the media.
- 4 There's now a whole generation of people _____ print newspapers are a thing of the past.
- 5 In most political parties, there are now social media experts _____ watching out for the latest trends online.
- 6 There is a younger breed of politicians _____ look at ease posing for selfies or posting clips on YouTube.
- 7 I'd never go to a shop and buy a newspaper these days – I only ever read the free ones _____ you get at train stations.
- 8 The polished way _____ politicians address their audiences immediately makes me distrust them.

3a Underline the relative clauses in sentences 1–8. Which words can be omitted?

- 1 For an increasing number of people, the mainstream media is not the first source which they turn to for news.
- 2 Blogging is just one way in which individuals and groups can publish their ideas to a wider audience.
- 3 Social media sites like Twitter and YouTube also provide a platform which can be used to spread information and opinion.
- 4 News reporters can't always get to the place where an incident has happened right away.
- 5 'Citizen journalists' can often publish news and pictures of events the moment when they happen.
- 6 A member of the public can post video footage online of a major incident and the emergency services who are attending it within seconds.
- 7 Online media is easily accessible to a wide range of people, which means that everyone can now have a voice.
- 8 Individuals who are seeking to influence political policy are starting to challenge the more traditional, organized and well-funded lobby groups.

b 5.1))) Listen to the sentences without any unnecessary words and check.

c 5.1))) Listen again, and repeat.



Vocabulary common phrases with relative pronouns

4 Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

as a result of which in which case only a few of whom
several of whom the day when the reason why
the way in which to the point where

- 1 As a group, young people tend to be disengaged with politics, _____ a low proportion register to vote.
 - 2 In some countries, it has almost got _____ the government is elected largely by people aged over forty-five.
 - 3 Some suggest that it's _____ politics is communicated that doesn't connect with young people.
 - 4 Some young people are passionate about issues that they feel are ignored by the mainstream, _____ they turn instead to alternative protest movements.
 - 5 Many would like to see _____ the profile of politicians more closely matches the make-up of the population as a whole.
 - 6 The European Parliament has 751 elected members, _____ are under thirty, which is less than 5%.
 - 7 The Parliament is largely made up of older representatives, _____ are aged over eighty!
 - 8 It's up to society as a whole to explain to young people _____ it's so important to vote.
- 5** Rewrite the sentences in a more formal style by replacing the words in italics with a phrase from exercise 4.
- 1 Politicians are having to think about *how* they can use social media to reach a younger audience.

 - 2 Young people are often in lower income groups, *so* they are also less likely to vote in elections.

 - 3 Some nations, such as Australia and Luxembourg, have compulsory voting, *and in these countries* voter turnout is very high for all age groups.

 - 4 We spoke to a group of university students, *and a fair number of them* said they wouldn't vote even if it was compulsory.

 - 5 The situation in South Africa got *so serious that* only 33% of eighteen- to nineteen- year olds were registered to vote ahead of the 2014 election.

I can ...

use relative clauses.

Very well Quite well More practice

☐
☐
☐

use common phrases with relative pronouns.

☐
☐
☐

5.2 The power of the sun

Grammar quantifiers

- 1 Read the Q&A about solar flares. Choose the correct words or phrases in *italics* to complete the text.

Do solar flares from the sun affect us here on Earth?

Solar flares send energetically charged particles and electromagnetic radiation (mostly X-rays) towards the Earth. Thankfully, ¹ *neither of / either* these generally break through the Earth's atmosphere to directly affect us. And any high energy particles that do make it to the Earth's surface don't cause ² *just enough / nearly enough* radiation to have a noticeable impact on people.

What about solar storms?

Solar storms, also known as geomagnetic storms, are caused by an increase in activity on the surface of the sun. Solar storms can disturb the Earth's atmosphere, which in turn can damage satellites. They can also have an impact on power lines, causing power losses. This can happen in ³ *some / any* area with long power lines, but is especially likely in more northerly regions. To date though, ⁴ *neither of / either of* these phenomena has caused really major disruption.

Do solar storms affect the weather?

Solar storms do seem to follow a regular cycle, so that we see a major storm approximately ⁵ *every / each* eleven years. We don't fully understand the connection between solar storms and the weather: ⁶ *all we know / we all know* is that ⁷ *each of these / each time* periods of intense solar activity seems to coincide with unusual drops in temperature and increases in rainfall in some areas.

Do solar flares have any positive effects?

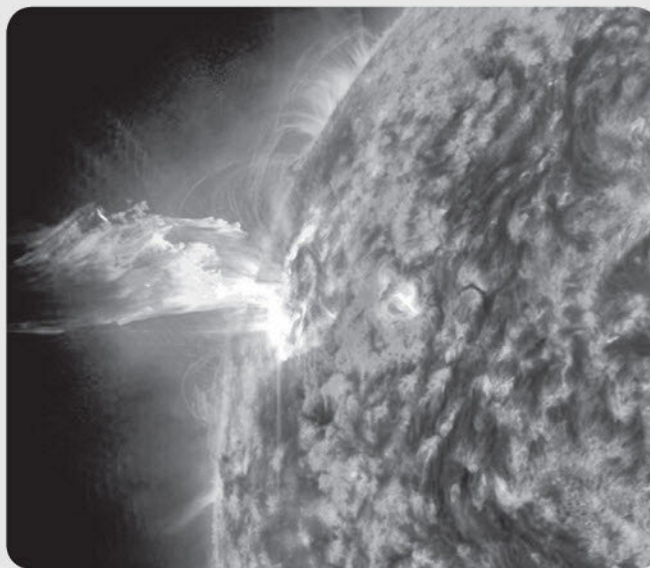
Probably the most positive effect of increased solar activity is what it does to the auroras; the spectacular coloured lights that can be seen in the sky in ⁸ *either of / either* the two auroral zones, in the most northerly and southerly parts of the world. These are caused by charged particles entering the atmosphere, and during solar storms, auroras are both brighter and more widely spread than usual. Auroras actually occur through ⁹ *the whole day / all the days*, but they are most spectacular at night when it's ¹⁰ *dark enough / enough darkness* to fully appreciate this amazing natural lightshow.

- **coincide** (*verb*) to take place at the same time
- **particle** (*noun*) an extremely small piece of matter, such as an electron or proton

- 2 Complete the facts about the solar cycle with words from the box. Not all the words are needed. There may be more than one possible answer.

all amount each every few many most neither
number several whole

- 1 The amount of energy released during _____ solar flare is equivalent to millions of atomic bombs exploding at the same time.
- 2 Scientists have been observing solar cycles for _____ hundred years. The first known cycle peaked around 1760 and is traditionally numbered cycle 1.
- 3 _____ peaks in the solar cycle are accompanied by an increase in solar activity, although this isn't always the case.
- 4 During the period between 1645 and 1715, known as the Maunder Minimum, very _____ solar flares were observed. This is not thought to be due to a lack of data, but instead a period of weak solar activity.
- 5 The Maunder Minimum coincided with a _____ of very cold winters in Europe and North America, known as the Little Ice Age.
- 6 _____ twenty-four solar cycles observed to date have been between nine and fourteen years long, with an average length of eleven years.
- 7 During cycle 24, scientists observed two peaks of activity, in February 2012 and April 2014, _____ of which was very high. Observations make this the weakest cycle since 1906.
- 8 _____ scientists predict that the next peak, due in 2022, will also see relatively weak solar activity.



3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.

- 1 If the sky's clear of clouds, you can sometimes see the Northern Lights from here. (enough)

- 2 You can see the lights from the countries inside the Arctic Circle. (any)

- 3 I'd say the best time to see the lights is in November or February. (either)

- 4 The twenty-five rooms at the hotel have a cosy viewing area from which to watch the night skies. (all)

- 5 The rooms also have a telescope for star-gazing. (each)

- 6 We can't guarantee that you'll always see the aurora, as it depends on the weather. (every night)



Vocabulary phrases with *of* to describe quantity

4a Match beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h.

- 1 Only the handful of b
 - 2 The absence of _____
 - 3 Every year, dozens of _____
 - 4 During the cold wet winter months, there's a shortage of _____
 - 5 We generally produce a surplus of _____
 - 6 In the summer months, we spend a great deal of _____
 - 7 They were working an excessive number of _____
 - 8 Climate science is hampered by an acute scarcity of _____
- a hours in very high temperatures without adequate breaks or drinking water.
 - b countries which lie above the Arctic Circle experience the midnight sun.
 - c people gather on the shores of the lake to celebrate Midsummer Eve.
 - d accurate data going back in time.
 - e food in the summer months, some of which can be stored for use in winter.
 - f locally-produced food which leads to a reliance on imports.
 - g our time doing stuff outdoors.
 - h rain during the summer months led to drought conditions.



b 5.2 Listen and check your answers.

c Rank the sentences 1–8 in exercise 4a from the least quantity to the greatest quantity.

least								greatest
2								

d Are the following phrases followed by a countable noun (C), an uncountable noun (U) or can they be followed by both (B)?

- 1 a shortage of ... _____
- 2 a handful of ... _____
- 3 dozens of ... _____
- 4 a great deal of ... _____
- 5 a surplus of ... _____
- 6 an absence of ... _____
- 7 an excessive number of ... _____
- 8 an acute scarcity of ... _____

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use quantifiers.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use phrases with <i>of</i> to describe quantity.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

5.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary compound adjectives and nouns

- 1 Complete the sentences using compound adjectives from the box.

brightly-lit eye-catching fast-moving long-lasting
narrow-minded old-fashioned time-consuming
world-famous

- 1 She has a _____ view of the world with little tolerance for different attitudes.
- 2 Restoring the building has been an expensive and _____ process.
- 3 As you enter the gallery, you're immediately struck by an _____ display of coloured glass vases.
- 4 I was lucky enough to interview the _____ novelist, Doris Lessing.
- 5 We emerged from the gloomy corridor into a large _____ studio.
- 6 The _____ water swept the fallen trees and branches down the river.
- 7 She doesn't seem to have suffered any _____ effects from the accident.
- 8 He has a rather conservative, _____ style of leadership.

- 2 Rewrite the sentences using a compound adjective containing a number.

- 1 At the weekend, she runs five kilometres.
... *she does a five-kilometre run.*
- 2 On average, they work for eight hours a day.

- 3 Their son is twelve years old.

- 4 Since the late nineties, prices have increased fourfold.

- 5 It only takes five minutes to walk to the post office.

- 6 We're going on holiday for two weeks in Thailand.

- 7 The coffee comes in packets weighing 250 grams.

- 8 Katherine Hepburn won an Oscar for best actress a record-breaking four times.

➔ **STUDY TIP** Recording a variety of common compound phrases in which a word can be used in your vocabulary notebook can help you learn more about the meaning of a word and how it's used.

■ social media ■ media coverage ■ mainstream media

Don't forget to notice which words are joined by a hyphen and which become one word.

■ fast-moving water ■ weekend

Vocabulary extension

- 3 Complete the compound nouns using the same word in each group of sentences 1–5.

- 1 a I try not to spend too much time on social media.
b The story received both local and national media coverage.
c There's a question mark over government influence on the mainstream media.
- 2 a The first of January is a _____ holiday in many countries.
b As the son of the president, he grew up in the _____ eye.
c With austerity cuts, the provision of many _____ services is under threat.
- 3 a It's cheaper to buy a season _____ if you're commuting every day.
b According to statistics, women buy slightly more lottery _____ than men.
c We offer a range of concessionary _____ prices.
- 4 a We've suffered a bit of a set _____, but I think we'll still meet the deadline.
b One major draw _____ of the study was the small sample size.
c There's a money-_____ guarantee if you're not completely satisfied.
- 5 a There's a one night _____ over in Dubai with this flight.
b In text messages, people often miss out punctuation like commas and full _____.
c Our website is the one-_____ shop for all your plumbing needs.

5.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking managing conversations

- 1a** Complete the conversations with two words in each gap. Contractions (e.g. *I'm*) count as one word. There may be more than one possible answer.
- A I really should cut down on the amount of coffee I drink.
 B Yes, I know what ¹_____. If I drink too much, it gives me a headache.
 A I just struggle to get my day started without my morning coffee.
 B Oh yes, I couldn't ²_____. It's always the first thing I do when I get up, too.
 - A Look at these apples. I don't understand why people buy this kind of stuff.
 B I'm not sure I ³_____. They look OK to me.
 A I'm sure they're delicious, but that's not ⁴_____. They've been flown halfway round the world. Why can't people just buy local apples?
 B I suppose ⁵_____, but apples aren't in season here at the moment.
 A So, why not eat something else that is?
 - A I don't let the kids have computers in their bedrooms because looking at screens before they go to sleep isn't good for them.
 B How do ⁶_____?
 A Well, apparently there's something about the light from screens that affects the hormones in your brain and stops you sleeping properly.
 B Really? I'd ⁷_____.
 A Yes, there's been lots of research into it.

b 5.3 Listen and compare your answers.

Writing emphasis: inversion and cleft sentences

- 2** Choose the correct words in italics to complete the blog post.

I'm a confirmed meat-eater. Rarely ¹ *do I have / I have* a meal that doesn't contain meat in some form. Don't get me wrong, I enjoy my veggies too, but ² *the reason / the thing* that really makes a meal is the meat. There's nothing quite like a nice juicy steak or a tasty meat pie. ³ *Not only / No sooner* is meat delicious, but it's full of protein, too. People say that meat isn't good for you. ⁴ *It's not / There isn't* the meat that's the problem though, it's the lack of a balanced diet. ⁵ *The reason / What* causes health issues is people eating burgers and chips all the time, and nothing else. I agree that eating plenty of fresh fruit and veg is important for staying healthy, but no way ⁶ *I would / would I* give up my meat.



- 3** Put the words in the right order. There may be more than one possible answer.

- but / is / not only / it's also / a vegetarian diet / more environmentally sustainable / healthier
- used up / me / resources / the amount of / what / is / really concerns / in farming animals for meat
- for cattle farming / wildlife habitat / little / people realize / how much / do / is cleared
- unhappy about / because / I / meat / is / farm animals / I'm / are treated / the reason / the way / don't eat
- now / no / ever / I / way / meat / would / eat
- love / is / confirmed meat-eaters / this dish / it / so tasty, / will / even

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use compound adjectives and nouns.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
manage conversations.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use emphasis in writing.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

6.1 Play games and save the planet?

Grammar uses of *would*

1a Read the article. Match definitions 1–4 to the underlined words and phrases in the title and text. Ignore the gaps in the text.

- 1 teachers and experts in the theory and practice of teaching _____
- 2 the ability to think and understand things _____
- 3 the use of ideas that come from game-playing in another activity _____
- 4 a method of teaching that determines what to teach based on the student's past performance _____

b Complete the article in exercise 1a with words and phrases from the box. You may use each one more than once.

would would be would have
wouldn't would rather
you'd have thought

2a 6.1 Listen to a science teacher talking about the use of computer games in teaching. Mark the statements true (T) or false (F) according to the teacher's opinions.

- 1 Some computer games are fun but they aren't educational. ____
- 2 Pupils no longer go on field trips as part of their courses. ____
- 3 Audio and video in games can help pupils understand unfamiliar environments. ____
- 4 Critical thinking skills are not employed during the playing of the games. ____
- 5 Educational computer games shouldn't encourage competition. ____

The gamification of education

Computer games are increasingly playing a role in school curriculums across the world. As gaming has become a key part of many kids' lives outside the classroom, educationalists have realized how useful it ¹ _____ to use that enthusiasm in school. Few ² _____ argue that computer games should replace conventional teaching altogether, but games can be a powerful learning tool when combined with other activities and types of teaching.

Perhaps the most obvious advantage of educational gaming is its motivational effect. Most kids ³ _____ play a game than write an essay, but, for teachers, it's the low-performing students who benefit most. As one teacher puts it: 'There always used to be a handful of kids who ⁴ _____ struggle no matter what I tried, who just didn't respond well to traditional teaching. I never imagined that introducing gaming ⁵ _____ such a significant impact, but for some of those kids, it really was the key that unlocked learning for them.'

Beyond being fun for students, computer games can also provide valuable feedback to teachers on the progress of individuals. Imagine how useful it ⁶ _____ if every teacher could monitor the progress of each child in their classes all the time. ⁷ _____ it be great if you could then use that information to adapt what they do next to suit their individual needs? This concept, known as adaptive learning, is a key feature of many of the latest generation of educational games.

It ⁸ _____ wrong to suggest that gaming doesn't have its limitations, though. One key point of debate is whether gaming is an effective tool in improving students' memory and cognitive skills. Does it help them to better understand and remember things? Although ⁹ _____ that the kind of 'brain training' activities that many games involve ¹⁰ _____ help improve cognitive skills generally, a number of research studies seem to show that, in fact, students only get better at playing a particular game and the skills they learn don't transfer more generally to other tasks.



b 6.1))) Listen again and complete extracts 1–9 using the words you hear.

- 1 Not that long ago, *I would've thought of games* as just a gimmick ...
- 2 If a game didn't have a real educational aim, then _____ by the school.
- 3 In the old days, _____ the students out on a field trip ...
- 4 _____ lots of fun collecting samples ...
- 5 ... and _____ something about that particular ecosystem.
- 6 They can find out about places that _____ to visit ...
- 7 ... they're asked what _____ if a particular element of that system was changed.
- 8 And it's not always as straightforward _____.
- 9 Sometimes there are knock-on effects the students _____ predicted.

c 6.2))) Listen, check and repeat.

Vocabulary preferences

3 Complete comments 1–6 with the correct form of the phrases from the box. There are two phrases you do not need.

be a role model be an inspiration be indifferent
express a preference have the highest regard look up
take a dislike take great pleasure

- 1 Social media fans seem to have _____ to the new site layout, which many have described as 'ugly'.
- 2 As educational software developers, we _____ in hearing about how these games have helped some kids really develop.
- 3 These young entrepreneurs who've started up their own web-based businesses should _____ to the next generation that aspire to follow in their footsteps.
- 4 Many dot-com executives who _____ for young people today don't wear suits and ties; they look just like them and wear jeans and trainers.
- 5 People with reading difficulties may _____ for a particular font style or colour that they can read more easily.
- 6 I _____ for anyone who can successfully create effective educational software for classroom contexts.

4 Match beginnings 1–6 to endings a–f.

- 1 The mentoring scheme provides _____
 - 2 A small number of students gave a _____
 - 3 They should try to overcome their _____
 - 4 He served as an _____
 - 5 Our tutor shows the greatest _____
 - 6 They clearly get a great deal of _____
- a preference for writing by hand in the final exams.
 - b dislike of each other and work together as a team.
 - c pleasure from their work.
 - d role models for trainee lawyers to look up to.
 - e inspiration for generations of writers.
 - f regard for students who challenge established theories.

5 Identify the verbs, prepositions and any other words that are used with the nouns in exercises 3 and 4.

- 1 *express* / *give* a preference *for* something
- 2 _____ / _____ a role model
_____ / _____ someone
- 3 _____ a dislike _____ something/
someone, _____ a dislike _____
something/someone
- 4 _____ pleasure _____ (doing)
something, _____ pleasure _____
(doing) something
- 5 _____ / _____ an inspiration
_____ / _____ someone
- 6 _____ / _____ (the highest/greatest)
regard _____ something/someone

6 Rewrite the sentences using the noun form of the verb in italics. Make any other necessary changes.

- 1 Most gamers said they much *preferred* this console.

- 2 Many of the testers *disliked* the central character.

- 3 Gamers are really *pleased* when they improve their personal best score.

- 4 Traditional Manga cartoons *have inspired* many modern games designers.

- 5 Shigeru Miyamoto is highly *regarded* within the video gaming industry.

I can ...

use *would*.

Very well Quite well More practice

☐
☐
☐

talk about preferences.

☐
☐
☐

6.2 The invention of leisure

Grammar verb patterns

- 1 Choose the correct words in italics to complete the article.

Work-life balance: a word from the wise

Working with the elderly, I often get the opportunity ¹ *to listen / to have listened* to people reflecting on their lives; both reminiscing about the good times, and also voicing their regrets about the things they would like ² *to have been doing / to have done* differently.

Interestingly, the most common thing I hear again and again is that people regret ³ *having spent / to have spent* so much of their life working. They talk about how they were so focused on work and career that they missed out on what they now realize were the really important things. Men, in particular, often tell me they feel sorry ⁴ *to have missed / having been missed* their children growing up. They happily reminisce about ⁵ *to have enjoyed / having enjoyed* family holidays together, but they also say they would have liked ⁶ *to have been / to being* more involved in their kids' early years.

Friendship is another recurrent theme. The people I talk to often mention how fortunate they were ⁷ *to have had / having had* so many good friends through their lives. They tell stories about the times they spent ⁸ *having / to have had* fun with friends in



their youth. But they also say they were sorry ⁹ *having lost / to have lost* touch with some of them. Friendships frequently seem ¹⁰ *to have drifted / to have been drifting* apart as work and family commitments got in the way. They meant ¹¹ *having given / to have given* so-and-so a call, but somehow too much time passed by and they never got round to it.

There's clearly a lot we can learn from those who have lived their lives and have the luxury ¹² *of looking / to have looked* back. Perhaps they can be the prompt to make us look at what we're doing now and shift the balance a little while we can.

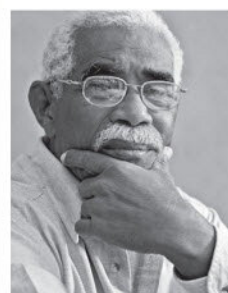
2a Match beginnings 1-10 to endings a-j.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Apparently, we visited Malaysia when I was a kid, but I have no memory of ____ | a not having been invited to the wedding. |
| 2 Looking back at old family photos, most of my childhood appears ____ | b to have taken a later flight, but they were more expensive. |
| 3 Last summer, my cousin Chandy was ____ | c to have been spent at the beach. |
| 4 It was quite chilly in the evenings and I was relieved ____ | d to have brought that book for you, but I forgot. |
| 5 Now you mention it, I do vaguely remember ____ | e having been there at all. |
| 6 Ideally, I would have preferred ____ | f having missed your birthday. |
| 7 Oh, I'm sorry, I meant ____ | g to have stayed with us for a couple of weeks, but her plans changed. |
| 8 Alex said to tell you he's really sorry for ____ | h to have packed a warm jacket. |
| 9 I only had time for a quick coffee with Mei, but I was glad ____ | i having arranged to meet up next weekend. |
| 10 Luigi was complaining again about ____ | j to have met up with her anyway. |

b 6.3 Listen and check your answers.

3 Rewrite the sentences replacing the words in italics with a present or perfect infinitive or *-ing* form. Make any other necessary changes.

- We were fortunate *that we missed* the worst of the Friday night traffic.
We were fortunate to have missed the worst of...
- The train was soon full, so I was glad *that I'd booked* a seat in advance.
- I'm really sorry *that I didn't tell* you about it earlier.
- It was reported *that traffic was queuing* for over two hours because of the accident.
- The CEO *had planned to stand down* but decided to carry on in spite of the poor results.
- I wanted to go*, but couldn't make it in the end.



My next-door neighbours are having some work done on their house at the moment and the noise is really 7 _____ me up the wall. It's worse at weekends, when I just want to relax and then someone starts banging or drilling. At first, I tried not to get too 8 _____ out about it, but it's been going on for weeks now and I feel like I'm constantly on 9 _____, just waiting for the noise to start up.

5 Rewrite the sentences, replacing the words in italics with words and phrases from exercise 4. There may be more than one possible answer.

- The noise of the construction work outside our hotel room was *really irritating me*.
- The ambulance staff were trying to get the victim to *relax*.
- Joon-ho seemed a bit *anxious* about moving house.
- When there's an inspection at the hospital, all the staff are *nervous and worried about it*.
- We're going to the coast for a long weekend, just *to relax and do nothing*.
- I was *very nervous* before the interview, but talking to Patrick about it made me feel a bit better.
- It may sound easy, but it's actually a very *tough* task that requires great skill and patience.
- I find that the people there generally have a more *relaxed and easy-going* attitude to life than we do.
- We start to *annoy each other* if we spend too much time together.

Vocabulary leisure, relaxation and stress

4 Complete the comments with words from the box.

bundle calm down chilling demanding driving edge
laid-back nerves stressed



Family holidays can be a stressful time. My daughter's really scared of flying, so by the time we arrive at the airport, she's usually a 1 _____ of nerves and we're all trying to get her to 2 _____. My son's at the opposite end of the scale. He's so 3 _____ he spends the

whole journey with his headphones on, playing games on his phone. It gets on my wife's 4 _____ a bit that he never hears anything she says, but at least he's happy.



I've got quite a 5 _____ job in the city and I work pretty long hours. So when I get time off, I head to the countryside. My favourite spot is this beautiful lake about an hour's drive away. It's really peaceful and tranquil, and perfect for just 6 _____ out and watching the wildlife.

I can ...

understand and use verb patterns.

talk about leisure, relaxation and stress.

Very well Quite well More practice



6.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary words with more than one meaning

- 1 Complete each group of sentences 1–5 with one word. You may need to use different forms of the word.



- 1 a The colours of the trees are _____ in the surface of the lake.
b We want the documentary to _____ the views of the whole community.
c This allows students time to _____ on their experience of the course.
- 2 a The candidates are preparing for a presidential _____ next spring.
b The _____ winner was presented with a trophy and a cheque for €500.
c Employers cannot discriminate on the basis of _____, religion or gender.
- 3 a Contestants score extra _____ by answering bonus questions.
b We just didn't see the _____ in carrying on any longer.
c Be careful as that knife has a very sharp _____.
- 4 a The new _____ road around the city has really helped reduce congestion.
b I'll give you a _____ tomorrow and let you know the details.
c In most cultures, you wear your wedding _____ on your left hand.
- 5 a It isn't easy to _____ on a small pension.
b Did you _____ to find a place to park?
c Deepak _____ a team of more than twenty-five people.

Vocabulary extension

- ➔ **STUDY TIP** Some common words have a more specialized meaning when they are used in a particular context.
■ The extra load applied *stress* to the wall, resulting in cracking. Here the word *stress* is used in a physics/engineering context. Remember some words are more frequent in one form, e.g. *chair* is usually a noun, but can also be used with a different meaning in another form, e.g. to *chair* a meeting.

- 2a Match the words in italics in sentences 1–8 to definitions a–h.

- 1 The most significant *find* was a bronze ring believed to have belonged to an Egyptian pharaoh. c
 - 2 The *mean* age of respondents was twenty-two years. _____
 - 3 She suffered a severe *stroke* that seriously affected her speech. _____
 - 4 Our local councillor has agreed to *table* a question about the plans at the next meeting. _____
 - 5 The device is easily connected via a USB *port*. _____
 - 6 Both *parties* must agree to the terms of the contract. _____
 - 7 Silva scored from a *corner* in the final minutes of the game. _____
 - 8 The supermarket chain announced a *loss* for the first quarter. _____
- a the people or groups involved in an agreement
 - b an amount of money lost by a business or organization
 - c something valuable that is discovered
 - d to put something forward for discussion
 - e a free kick taken from the corner of the pitch near to your opponent's goal
 - f a place for attaching one piece of equipment to another, especially via a cable
 - g a condition caused by lack of blood flow to part of the brain
 - h an average of a set of numbers

- b Match the words in italics in exercise 2a to the specialist areas in the box.

archaeology computing finance law maths
medicine politics sport

- | | |
|----------------------|---------|
| 1 <u>archaeology</u> | 5 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 6 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 8 _____ |

6.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking vague language (2)

- 1a Complete extracts 1–6 from a conversation about a TV wildlife documentary with words and phrases from the box.

ever just a or something like that plenty of rather
stuff thing

- Did you see that new wildlife _____ on TV last night?
- Some of the filming was _____ so impressive.
- Yeah, there was _____ really good photography, but I thought the commentary was _____ bit annoying.
- Well, they'd say 'this animal isn't found anywhere else in the world' _____ ...
- I guess it was _____ repetitive at times.
- And, to be honest, all that _____ about how difficult the filming conditions were got on my nerves a bit, too.

- b 6.4))) Listen to the conversation and check.

Writing online reviews

- 2 Complete the collocations using words from the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

action-packed dazzling disappointment engaging
highlight lacking life must-see perfect powerful
steal wooden

- a particularly powerful/dazzling/engaging performance
- a notable _____ of the show
- a rather lifeless and _____ performance
- _____ comic timing
- a thoroughly _____ production
- a slight _____
- a real _____ film
- a little _____ in atmosphere
- absolutely _____ visual effects
- an _____ plot
- _____ the show
- bring a character to _____

- 3 Edit the review by adding or substituting words from exercise 2 to improve the underlined sections. Make any other necessary changes.



This new stage production of Khaled Hosseini's novel, *The Kite Runner*, was ¹ good. The whole cast were excellent, including the two child actors, who were completely convincing as the central characters growing up together in Kabul in the opening scenes. But Kamel Malik, playing the adult Amir in the second half of the play, ² was the best actor. He gave a ³ very good performance as the guilt-ridden young man who returns from his new life in America back to his native Afghanistan.

The director used some ⁴ really clever production methods to convey the kite-flying sequences with beautiful projections; a ⁵ good point of the show. Otherwise, however, the set was ⁶ not that good and ⁷ didn't give much of a feel for Kabul as a place. Overall though, the ⁸ good story held the audience's attention and it was a thoroughly enjoyable evening: definitely ⁹ recommended for anyone who was a fan of the original novel or film.

- thoroughly engaging
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand words with more than one meaning.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use vague language (2).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write an online review.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

6.5 Reading for pleasure

Apps that make a difference

- 1 What's your opinion about apps on mobile phones?



1 I'm a complete slave to apps, I really can't imagine my life without them.

2 They're real life-savers sometimes, but I'm not overdependent on them.

3 They're a complete waste of time and they're also incredibly antisocial.

- 2 Read the text about two different types of apps and find out what difference they can make.
- 3 Which of the apps from the text would you prefer to try and why? Do you know of, or can you think of, any other apps that might make the world a better place?

Apps that make a difference

If you think that apps are only for listening to music, playing games or finding your way around, think again. There are loads of apps out there that are making the world a better place to live in. Here are just two of them.

HTC Power to Give

All over the world, scientists are looking for answers to the mysteries of the universe, solutions for our biggest problems and alternatives to improve our living conditions. Whether it's fighting cancer, looking for extra-terrestrial life or developing a new superconductor, they need all the help they can get. And that's where Power to Give comes in.

All you have to do is download the app, and then plug it in the socket – it only works when your phone is connected to Wi-Fi and a power source. While your phone is charging, it receives data from environmental, medical or scientific research teams and processes it using your phone's unused capacity. That information is then sent back to the researchers.

The combined power of a network of mobile phones can be stronger than the world's largest supercomputers, so projects that could have taken decades can be executed in a much shorter time. You can even choose a project that matters to you personally.

And there simply aren't any catches – helping to develop the collective knowledge of mankind isn't going to cost you a thing: HTC Power to Give doesn't interfere with your normal use of the phone, and doesn't eat up battery power or your data allowance.

Instead

What would happen if, instead of buying that fancy latté one day, you gave the money to your favourite charity? How much would it help them? Not much maybe, but suppose you did that twice a week for a year? How about if thousands of people did the same? That's the idea behind Instead, an app that does basically two things: it tells you how much that small amount of money you save by giving up little everyday luxuries can help others, and also gives you a quick, hassle-free way to donate that amount there and then.

'We want to encourage people to live within or below their means,' explains Micah Davis, one of the software designers in this project. He hopes it'll help you lead a better and more fulfilling life, and in the process, build a habit of donating little by little, but over a longer period.

The app has proven most popular with people trying to cut down on food and coffee, but you can also set challenges to colleagues or co-workers. How about everybody bringing a packed lunch from home for a week, and donating the money you would have spent in the staff canteen? 'People want to set up these social challenges and goals with a little social gamification involved,' Davis says.

Download the app, choose from a list of charities and enter your credit card information. Then the next time you feel the urge for an ice-cream or a donut, just walk away and, in one click, donate that cash to someone who will definitely benefit more. And what you'll get out of it instead of that guilty and brief feeling of pleasure is the feel-good factor that no sugar-covered treat can give you!



Review: Units 5 and 6

Grammar

- 1 Choose the correct word or phrase in *italics* to complete the sentences.
- It's always better to book tickets in advance *where* / *would be* possible.
 - Neither of the two men *was* / *were* available for comment this morning.
 - Luis won't be able to make it because he's away for work, *what* / *which* is a great shame.
 - Every* / *Each* of the boys was given a locker to keep their things in.
 - I expect Claudio *had* / *would* rather get the earlier train, if that's OK with you.
 - Apparently, *all of them* / *all* eleven players agreed to the changes.
- 2 Does each pair of sentences have a similar (S) or different (D) meaning?
- ___ a It was tough going, but I was really pleased to have reached the top.

___ b It was tough going, but I was really pleased that I reached the top.
 - ___ a I'd have liked to have gone on to do my PhD.

___ b I enjoyed going on to do my PhD.
 - ___ a He was a bit surprised not to have been offered the position.

___ b He was a bit surprised that he wasn't offered the position.
 - ___ a Patrice was meant to have collected the books on Monday morning.

___ b Patrice went to collect the books on Monday morning.

Vocabulary

- 3 Circle the word or phrase in each group that has a different meaning.
- total lack of / shortage of / absence of
 - excess / surplus / majority
 - several / dozens / a handful
 - on edge / stressed out / demanding
 - laid-back / bundle of nerves / relaxed
 - look up to / loathe / idolize
 - can't stand / look down on / take a dislike to

- 4 Complete the text with words and phrases from the box. There are some words you do not need.

a few of whom demanding dozens edge handful
majority model nerves regard several of which
world-famous

The audition to join the Bolshoi ballet is incredibly ¹ _____, with two full days of tests and demonstrations. The ² _____ company, which is held in the highest ³ _____ within the ballet world, only accepts a ⁴ _____ of new dancers every year. ⁵ _____ of hopeful young dancers apply to join, only ⁶ _____ will make it through the selection process. As they wait to go in, everyone is on ⁷ _____ because they know that the ⁸ _____ of applicants will go home disappointed.



Speaking

- 5 Complete the conversation with words and phrases from the box. There are some words you do not need. There may be more than one possible answer.

a bit of ever so kind of loads of pretty some sort of
somewhat stuff

- A What did you think of the meal yesterday?
B I thought the food was ¹ _____ impressive, especially as Vince made it all himself.
A Yeah, there was some ² _____ that I'd never tried before.
B Did you have the curry? It was ³ _____ spicy, but really good.
A Yeah, that was delicious, and there was ⁴ _____ rice dish, too, that I really liked. Oh, and I had ⁵ _____ those little samosa things, they were great.

Emotion and reason

7.1 Fooled by our feelings

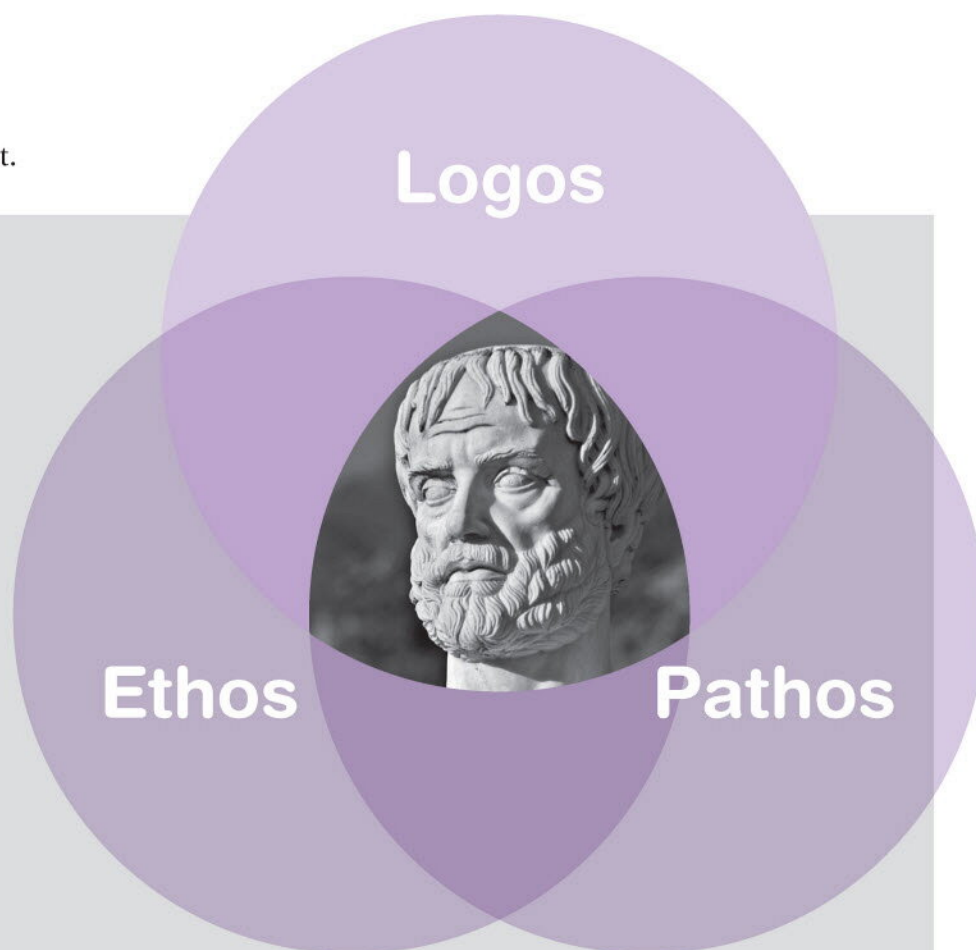
Grammar hypotheses

1a Choose the correct words in italics to complete the text.

Should we believe in academic objectivity?

We all know that academic writing is objective, based on facts and evidence, right? Well actually, most academic writing is equally about persuading an audience of your argument, your theory or your interpretation of the data. If you examine any academic paper closely, ¹ *you'll / you would* find the writer's stance in there somewhere.

Aristotle realized that if a speaker used certain rhetorical devices, ² *they would have been / they were* more likely to take their audience along with them. They put these devices into three categories, using the Greek words *logos*, *ethos* and *pathos* which refer to logic, character and emotion, respectively.



Logos

The most commonly used device is the logical argument. So, for example, if a researcher provides endless statistics to support their point, then ³ *we tend / we tended* to accept it as true. But of course, statistics can be chosen to suit a particular purpose. ⁴ *Had / If* a different set of data been presented on the same topic, would we have reached a different conclusion?

Ethos

To gain a reader's trust, an academic must present themselves as a trustworthy source. Suppose a writer only included one side in a discussion of an obviously controversial issue, ⁵ *you'd pick / you'd have picked* out right away that the writing was biased. If instead ⁶ *they'll / they'd* put forward the opposite argument and demonstrated why it was flawed, then you'd have been more likely to take them seriously. By acknowledging the opposite view, they give the impression of balance and objectivity.

Pathos

Appealing to a reader's emotions is something we expect in journalism. But imagine an academic writer ⁷ *would want / wanted* to convince their audience of the terrible effects of a childhood disease. They could put forward statistics about infant mortality or they could use a case study documenting the life (and death) of an individual child. The latter would have a greater emotional impact on the reader, while still using an accepted academic genre.

- **rhetorical device** a particular way of using language that helps persuade or influence people
- **credibility** the quality of being trusted and believed
- **infant mortality** the death of children under the age of one year old

- b** Complete the next part of the text with the correct form of the words in brackets. Add any other necessary words.

Asking critical questions

So next time you read something, ask yourself what the writer wants you to believe. Sometimes, what they don't say is as important as what's on the page. Consider these situations:

- Imagine you ¹ _____ (come across) an article that said 15 million letters go missing in the UK every year, you ² _____ (probably / think) there was a serious problem with the British postal service. But how many items of post are delivered in the UK in total? If you then ³ _____ (find out) that the number of missing items only accounts for 0.7% of the 22 billion letters handled annually, you'd probably change your opinion.
- A study finds that a much higher percentage of young people who leave school before they are sixteen years old go on to commit crime than those who stay in education longer. The researchers suggest there's a direct cause and effect relationship between crime and level of education. If someone ⁴ _____ (leave) school early, they'll be more likely to get involved in crime. But what about other factors? Could a lack of qualifications have led to difficulties in securing a job, and so, is unemployment the more accurate explanation? Or something else entirely? If the researchers ⁵ _____ (consider) other factors rather than solely the length of education, they ⁶ _____ (may / come up with) a more complex pattern of associations.

- b** Complete the table.

Adjective	Noun	Verb
devastated / <i>devastating</i>	1 _____	devastate
envious	2 _____	3 _____
4 _____ / 5 _____	frustration	6 _____
apprehensive	7 _____	
8 _____	relief	9 _____
10 _____ / 11 _____	12 _____	irritate
astonished / 13 _____	14 _____	15 _____
sympathetic	16 _____	17 _____
18 _____	apathy	
self-conscious	19 _____	
indifferent	20 _____	
21 _____	discomfort	22 _____

- c** 7.2))) Listen and check. Listen again, pause the listening and repeat.

- 3** Complete the descriptions using the correct form of a word from the table in exercise 2b. There may be more than one possible answer.

When we first put forward the idea of setting up a community group, we came up against quite a bit of ¹ _____ from local residents; people just didn't seem interested. Only a handful of people came along to our first meeting, so we decided to go round knocking on people's doors. I felt a bit ² _____ at first, because I know it sometimes ³ _____ me when people interrupt my evening like that. But we didn't want the project to fail before it had started, so it was important to find out people's views. It seemed they weren't against our plans: they were just a bit ⁴ _____ to the idea. They hadn't realized how a community group could help the local area.

When we first got to the coast from the capital, I was ⁵ _____ by the damage we saw. Everything had been destroyed by the cyclone: trees, houses, schools, everything. The storm had been absolutely ⁶ _____ for the coastal communities living there. They'd lost everything and didn't even have anything to eat or any shelter. We were able to help with redistributing what local food and fresh drinking water we had available, but we were very ⁷ _____ to get some outside help when the international aid agencies finally arrived. They helped out in the clearing-up operation and set up some temporary shelters. They were only able to stay for a few weeks and I think they found it a bit ⁸ _____ that they couldn't stay longer, but I'm still proud of what the local and international communities were able to achieve by working together in that short time.

Vocabulary emotions

- 2a** 7.1))) Listen to twelve comments. Are they describing largely positive (P) or negative (N) emotions?

- | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|
| 1 _____ | 5 _____ | 9 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 6 _____ | 10 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 7 _____ | 11 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 8 _____ | 12 _____ |

I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

talk about hypotheses.

☐ ☐ ☐

talk about emotions.

☐ ☐ ☐

7.2 Embarrassment

Grammar unreality

1 Complete the comments with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 He looked as if he _____ (be) really embarrassed about it. I've never seen such a bright red face in all my life!
- 2 I feel a bit bad that I didn't invite Helen, so I'd rather you _____ (mention) the party to her, if that's OK.
- 3 I can't remember Jan's husband's name. I wish I _____ (ask) when they arrived. It feels a bit awkward to admit I don't know now we've been chatting all evening!
- 4 I bumped into an old work colleague the other day at a conference, but he acted as though he _____ (know) me. It was really rather odd.
- 5 There's something very wrong with my laptop – it won't even switch on. If only I _____ (back up) my files.
- 6 I really wish my neighbours _____ (stop) playing loud music late at night. It's driving me mad!
- 7 It's high time that something _____ (be) done about the chewing gum on the streets. The local council must spend thousands cleaning it off pavements every year.
- 8 I'd sooner you _____ (take) the same subject again and have that tutor for another year. All you did was complain about her.
- 9 I wish you _____ (leave) all your stuff lying around everywhere. It's really annoying for everyone else.
- 10 I often wonder what goes on inside my cat's mind. If only they _____ (talk) and tell you how they feel.

2 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Add any other necessary words. You may use each verb more than once.

be clear up do finish off have keep make own speak

- 1 A Did you hear that Jason locked himself out of the house yesterday ... again?
B Oh no, really?
A Yes, I had to drive home from work in my lunch break to let him in. It's not like he's a kid any more so it really is about time he ¹ _____ a bit more responsible. I almost wish I ² _____ my phone switched off at the time, then he'd have been stuck outside all day.
- 2 A I think it's about time we ³ _____ a break for coffee.
B I'd rather we ⁴ _____ going, if that's OK. We've gone through most of the agenda and it'd mean we can probably take lunch a bit early.
- 3 A I'm not too keen on the new assistant manager. He acts as if he ⁵ _____ the place.
B Me, neither. I'd say it's about time we ⁶ _____ to the boss about it.
- 4 A So I hope you've enjoyed the workshop, but it's about time we ⁷ _____ for today, I'm afraid. But before you go, do you mind taking ten minutes to fill in this feedback form?
B Erm, I'm sorry, but I'd rather I ⁸ _____ right now. There's a bus at half past that I'd like to get so I kind of have to rush off.
- 5 A It seems as if there ⁹ _____ some kind of celebration in the common room last night.
B Don't tell me it's a mess in there again. I wish they ¹⁰ _____ after themselves.
- 6 A Boris had a bit of a cold last week. It really was nothing, but he was acting as if he ¹¹ _____ about to die!
B My husband is exactly the same. I wish he ¹² _____ such a big deal out of a bit of a runny nose!



Vocabulary reacting to events

3a Match beginnings 1–10 to endings a–j.

- 1 It completely *took* ____
- 2 I'd *make* ____
- 3 I just can't *think* ____
- 4 It was starting to *get* ____
- 5 I *was* ____
- 6 I heard there *was* ____
- 7 Don't *take* ____
- 8 Next time, I'll *think* ____
- 9 She *grabbed* ____
- 10 I didn't *lose* ____

- a *a heated argument* about it during questions at the end of the seminar.
- b *me by surprise* when he said he was emigrating.
- c *twice* before using him – he never meets his deadlines.
- d *mortified* when I realized she'd heard what I said.
- e *my temper* about it, but it was close!
- f *it personally* if you don't get a response.
- g *a point of* telling them it wasn't acceptable behaviour.
- h *the opportunity* to take a job in the Tokyo office with both hands.
- i *straight* today, but no news is good news, I suppose.
- j *on my nerves* so I moved to a different seat.

b 7.3))) Listen and check your answers.

c 7.3))) Listen again and repeat.

4 Complete the conversations using the correct form of the words and phrases in italics from exercise 3a.

- 1 **A** Has the building work next door finished yet?
B No. All the mess and noise *is getting on my nerves* now so I hope they finish soon.
- 2 **A** I was really upset by some of the customer comments.
B You shouldn't _____. Some people will always find something to complain about.
- 3 **A** So, you weren't very impressed by the restaurant, then?
B No, I'd definitely _____ before going there again.
- 4 **A** Did you know Pedro was planning to leave?
B No, I had no idea whatsoever. It totally _____.
- 5 **A** I heard that the whole restaurant started singing 'Happy Birthday' to you.
B Yes, I was absolutely _____! I went bright red!
- 6 **A** Erm, sorry, I think you've emailed me the wrong set of files.
B Oh, I'm sorry. I'm so tired – I'm finding it hard to _____.

5 7.4))) Listen to eight people talking about their feelings and reactions. Match comments a–h to speakers 1–8.

- a I felt very embarrassed. ____
- b I wasn't able to calmly make a decision. ____
- c I made a decision too quickly. ____
- d I thought it was important to speak to everyone. ____
- e I don't enjoy my colleague's behaviour. 1
- f I didn't expect the reply I got. ____
- g I'm not upset by a bit of criticism. ____
- h I very much disagreed at first. ____



I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

talk about unreality.

☐ ☐ ☐

react to events.

☐ ☐ ☐

7.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary metaphor

1a Read the three blog extracts a–c. Match a metaphorical idea 1–3 to each text. Ignore the gaps in the text.

- 1 an argument = a building _____
- 2 positive emotions = 'high' or 'up' _____
- 3 negative emotions = 'down' or 'low' _____



a

Any expedition has its ¹_____ and downs; times when you're struck by the beauty of nature and times when you just want to be back home in your own bed. The start and the end of the day are often high points. In the morning, everyone sets off in high ²_____ looking forward to the day ahead. And then, when you stop to set up camp after a tough day's hiking, you look out across the landscape as the sun's setting and you realize how far you've come and it gives you a real ³_____.



b

Students moving from undergraduate to postgraduate study often struggle with how to ⁴_____ an academic argument. They're used to just repeating 'facts' from their lectures or textbooks, but as postgraduates, they have to learn to really ⁵_____ their arguments with evidence from a range of sources. And that doesn't mean a few snippets of information from the internet: they need to find ⁶_____ evidence from reliable sources, otherwise their tutor will simply ⁷_____ their argument.



c

Setting up your own business can be a ⁸_____ of emotions, with its successes and its setbacks. Recently though I've been feeling a bit ⁹_____ -hearted about the whole enterprise. A number of big projects haven't worked out, leaving me with real financial concerns and my staff are in pretty ¹⁰_____ spirits about it all as well.

b Complete the texts in exercise 1a with words from the box. There are some words you do not need.

collapse construct demolish down high lift low rollercoaster
sound spirits support ups

Vocabulary extension

2a Choose the best metaphorical meaning for the word *hot* and the word *cold* from options a–c.

Rosa seems to *blow hot and cold* over the project: one minute she's full of the enthusiasm and ideas and the next, she seems to have lost interest.

- a not interested or lacking emotion
- b calm and thinking very clearly
- c excited and with strong emotions

hot _____

cold _____

b Match the underlined metaphorical words and phrases 1–10 to the metaphorical meanings a–c in exercise 2a.

- 1 Two committee members got into a very heated discussion over the issue of parking. _____
- 2 It's just great to see people so fired up about something they believe in. _____
- 3 He's very good at keeping his cool when dealing with difficult customers. _____
- 4 Technically he's a great artist, but his work just leaves me cold. _____
- 5 She said the comment had been made in the heat of the moment and she later apologized. _____
- 6 The next morning, in the cold light of day, he felt very ashamed of himself. _____
- 7 The idea was greeted by a decidedly lukewarm reply. _____
- 8 He plays the role of a hot-headed young detective who likes to break the rules. _____
- 9 Never reply to a message when you're upset: give yourself a bit of time to cool off and come back to it later. _____
- 10 Have I said something to upset Shona? I feel like she's been giving me the cold shoulder recently. _____

7.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking informal negotiations

- 1a Complete conversations 1–3 with words and phrases from the box.

did you have in mind if we could I'll have to ask
is there a problem with that it depends what you mean
provided supposing we that sounds what if I were to

- 1 A I'm afraid I won't be able to get the sales report finished by Thursday like I'd hoped, but I can get it to you on Monday. ¹ _____?
B Well, I need it for a meeting on Monday and I'd really like to look at it over the weekend.
A ² _____ get it to you by the end of the afternoon on Friday?
B OK, ³ _____ I definitely have it before the weekend.
- 2 A I was wondering ⁴ _____ make next week's seminar a bit earlier.
B Sorry, but what time ⁵ _____?
I have to get a bus into college and I already leave quite early.
A I was thinking we could start at 8 a.m. instead of 9 a.m., perhaps.
B I'm sorry, but I'd struggle to get in for 8 a.m.
A OK. ⁶ _____ make it 8.30 a.m., would that work for you?
B Yes, ⁷ _____ OK.
A Great. Well, if that's OK with everyone else, then I'll see you all next Wednesday at 8.30 a.m.
- 3 A Could I borrow your car for a bit over the weekend?
B Well, ⁸ _____ by 'for a bit'. I can't be without it all weekend.
A No, just for a couple of hours on Saturday afternoon. I need to pick some stuff up from a friend's place a bit out of town.
B OK. ⁹ _____ Isabelle, in case she needs it, but it should be fine.

b 7.5))) Listen and check your answers.

c 7.6))) Listen to extracts from the conversation, and repeat.

Writing comment adverbs

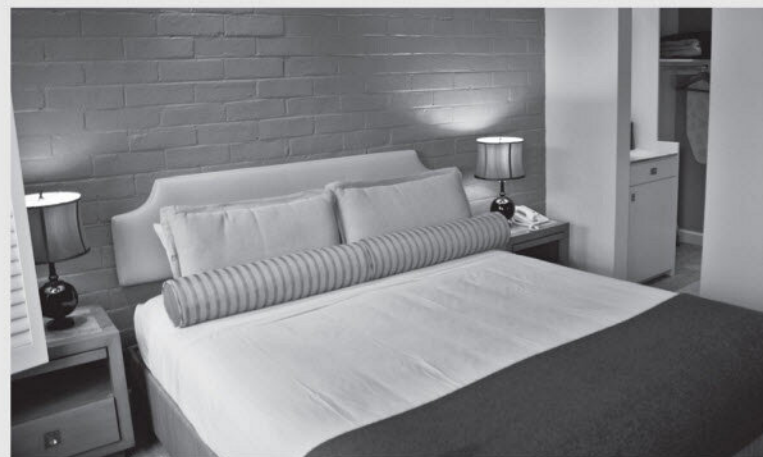
- 2 Complete the text with the best comment adverbs from the box. There are some adverbs you do not need.

admittedly astonishingly coincidentally evidently
~~frankly~~ ideally thankfully typically unfortunately

First impressions of the hotel were very good. It's a characterful old building that's been very tastefully redecorated to give it a contemporary feel. We were less impressed though when we got to our room. The room was described as 'small' on the website, but ¹ frankly, there wasn't even space to put your case down. We were worried initially too because the room overlooked a busy street but ² _____ the double-glazing kept most of the noise out.

In terms of facilities, the hotel had a fantastic-looking pool, but we couldn't have a swim in it because ³ _____ it was closed for repairs while we were there. We ate in the hotel restaurant a couple of times and it was generally quite good, although the menu was a bit limited. When we ventured out to eat, we struggled to get a table at any of the restaurants recommended in the guide, although ⁴ _____, we hadn't booked ahead.

The town itself is delightful, with its narrow cobbled streets and historic buildings. We didn't realize that it has an annual food festival every June and ⁵ _____, we arrived in time for the last couple of days of events. There were some fabulous local delicacies available to try and it turned out to be a real highlight of the trip. Several other tourists we spoke to didn't know about the food festival either as ⁶ _____ it's aimed more at local people than visitors.



I can ...

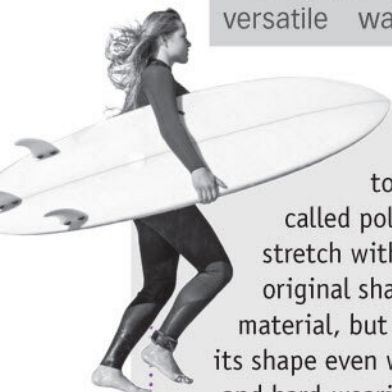
	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand metaphor.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
take part in informal negotiations.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use comment adverbs.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

8.1 The multi-purpose material

Vocabulary properties of materials

- 1 Complete the texts about three types of plastic using words from the box. There are some words you do not need.

absorbent biodegradable durable flexible fragile
lightweight magnetic rigid tough transparent
versatile water-resistant



Polyurethane is a simple plastic that's cheap to produce. It's made up of a network of fibres, called polymers, which gives it the ability to bend and stretch without breaking and then spring back to its original shape. That makes it a very ¹ _____ material, but because of its strength and ability to keep its shape even with repeated use, it's also ² _____ and hard-wearing. The combination of these two properties make it a very ³ _____ material with multiple uses, used in everything from fabrics to furniture to surfboards. It's also the most commonly used plastic in the manufacture of cars.

Polystyrene is familiar to most of us as the ⁴ _____ foam that's used to make takeaway coffee cups or protective packaging. It can also come in a clear, hard form that can be made into things like lids, bottles and disposable cutlery. It's solid at room temperature, but when heated it softens and can be very easily formed into almost any shape. It then becomes ⁵ _____ when cooled. Although it's a widely used plastic, it's controversial because it isn't ⁶ _____ and is one of the most common forms of litter, especially along coastlines.



Polythene is the most common type of plastic. We're all most familiar with it in the form of plastic bags. It's a very light material, but ⁷ _____ enough not to break or tear too easily. As it's also ⁸ _____, it's ideal for packaging foods so that they're sealed and don't leak. Like other plastics, polythene degrades very slowly, leaving landfill sites full of plastic bags. Progress has been made in producing polythene from natural substances, like starch, which break down naturally, but at present, plastics made like this tend to be rather ⁹ _____ and lack the strength needed for many everyday purposes.



PRONUNCIATION schwa sounds

- 2a Circle the weak schwa sounds /ə/ in the adjectives.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 absorbent | 5 versatile |
| 2 biodegradable | 6 water-resistant |
| 3 durable | 7 transparent |
| 4 flexible | |

- b 8.1))) Listen, check and repeat.

- 3 Rewrite the sentences, replacing the phrases in italics with words from exercise 1.

1 The doctor inserts a thin tube *which can bend easily* with a tiny camera on the end down the patient's throat.
The doctor inserts a thin flexible tube with a tiny camera ...

2 Make sure you bring a jacket *that protects you from the rain* and sturdy footwear, as the weather can be changeable.

3 This new fuel-efficient aircraft is made of advanced materials *that weigh very little*.

4 Lenses made from plastic *which you can see through* are lighter and stronger than traditional lenses made of glass.

5 There are moves to encourage fast-food outlets to use containers *that break down naturally*.

6 Packaging costs can be quite considerable for companies sending out items *which break easily* in the post.

Grammar probability and speculation

4a 8.2))) Listen and complete the sentences with the words you hear.

- 1 a I generally bring ceramic pots indoors in winter because _____ if it gets very cold.
b Any ceramic pots should be brought indoors in winter, otherwise _____ in the cold.
- 2 a If the drawers are made of solid wood, _____ pretty heavy.
b The drawers _____ quite heavy if they're made of solid wood.
- 3 a The cutlery _____ of solid silver, that would be incredibly expensive.
b It's _____ the cutlery's made of solid silver, it'd be too expensive.
- 4 a In the past, I suppose running shoes _____ of leather, or cloth, maybe.
b I guess running shoes _____ of leather in those days.
- 5 a There's _____ the festival _____ if the ground doesn't dry out in time.
b It's _____ the festival _____ because the ground's just too wet.
- 6 a Because they're made of stainless steel, these pans _____ you a lifetime.
b These stainless steel pans are so durable, _____ a lifetime.
- 7 a We're _____ more biodegradable plastics being used in the future.
b Biodegradable plastics _____ more commonplace.
- 8 a It _____ early man largely used animal skins to stay warm and dry.
b Early man _____ animal skins for clothing and shelter.

b Decide which is the more confident expression of probability in each pair of sentences in exercise 4a.

- | | | | |
|------------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 <u>b</u> | 3 _____ | 5 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 4 _____ | 6 _____ | 8 _____ |

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 Of course, scientists may find new materials that are environmentally-friendly, cheap and versatile. (chance)
Of course, there's a chance (that) scientists will find ...
- 2 I don't reckon that most people know exactly what materials go into making their tablet or smartphone. (doubtful)

- 3 Surely manufacturers are aware of the environmental costs of the materials they use. (must)

- 4 If you don't know the origin of the wood you buy, it's possible that it didn't come from a sustainable source. (might)

- 5 This new model will undoubtedly outperform anything else on the market. (guaranteed)

- 6 I'm sure the fabric isn't man-made - it feels too natural. (can't)

- 7 More things are definitely going to be custom-made using 3D printers in the future. (bound)

- 8 It's possible that Nadine's already gone home as she's not at her desk. (might)

- 9 It was never likely that the party would do well in the election. (improbable)

- 10 I'd expect Wei to have arrived in Vancouver by now, as it's only a two-hour flight. (should)

- 11 The favourite has the best chance of coming first, but it doesn't always pan out that way. (most likely)

- 12 Silk is a very delicate fabric and can easily be damaged if not handled carefully. (prone)

- 13 The recent negative press coverage has almost undoubtedly influenced the company's decision to make an announcement. (sure)

- 14 It's currently estimated that up to 20,000 people have almost certainly been affected by the flooding. (will)

I can ...

describe the properties of materials.

Very well

☐

Quite well

☐

More practice

☐

express probability and speculation.

☐
☐
☐

8.2 My life without ...

Grammar participle clauses

1 Choose the correct participle clause in italics to complete the article.

My life abroad without ...

We asked people ¹ *having lived and worked / living and working* outside their home countries what they miss most about home.

Lucas: I'm originally from the Netherlands, but ² *lived / having lived* here in Botswana for some fifteen years now, I've got used to most things. Generally ³ *speaking / being spoken*, I love the lifestyle here, it's much more relaxed. I guess the one thing I miss most about Europe though, is the seasons. When I first arrived, ⁴ *having / having had* almost constant hot, sunny weather seemed fantastic. After a while though, I found myself longing for winter. I sometimes reminisce about those crisp winter mornings ⁵ *walking / walked* to work ⁶ *wrapping / wrapped* up in coats and scarves!

Gosia: Since ⁷ *moving / moved* to the UK from Poland a couple of years ago, the thing I've noticed I miss most is the bread. English bread just isn't the same as the stuff we have at home. ⁸ *Given / Having been given* how many Polish people there are living here now, you'd think it'd be easier to get hold of. And there are quite a few Polish shops ⁹ *having sold / selling* all kinds of familiar foods, but of course, bread doesn't travel so well.

Yanna: On ¹⁰ *arriving / arrived* in Hong Kong, one of the first things you notice is the tower blocks. ¹¹ *Being / Having been* such a small island, space is at a premium, so everyone lives in apartments. I have a really nice apartment with a view out over the harbour, but ¹² *grown up / having grown up* in a fairly rural area in the Philippines, I really miss not having a garden. ¹³ *Growing / Being grown* your own vegetables and ¹⁴ *having / had* fresh flowers outside your window, for me, is really one of life's pleasures. ¹⁵ *Giving / Given* the chance, I'd quite like to move to one of the outlying islands where you can sometimes get an apartment with some outside space, but for the moment, ¹⁶ *being / having been* close to my office in the centre is more important.



2 Make participle clauses from the words in brackets to complete sentences 1–10. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 *If asked* (if / ask), I think most people living abroad would say they miss their families most.
- 2 _____ (be / big sports fan), I miss not being able to go and watch my local football team back home.
- 3 One thing I miss is _____ (all / fireworks / go off / to celebrate) Chinese New Year.
- 4 _____ (live / abroad) for so long now, I think I've just adjusted to a new way of life.
- 5 _____ (since / marry) my Brazilian husband, I've felt much more a part of the local community.

- 6 _____ (since / come / USA), I've had to get used to driving everywhere. I do miss walking to work.
- 7 I'm generally pretty happy here, but _____ (if / push), I'd maybe say I miss the sense of humour from back home.
- 8 _____ (come / small island), the thing I notice most living here in Switzerland is _____ (not / have / sea / nearby).
- 9 _____ (offer / one luxury / home), I'd definitely choose my mother's home-made pickle!
- 10 _____ (choose / move / here), I think I should make the most of living in a new culture.

Vocabulary phrasal verbs

3a Underline the phrasal verbs in sentences 1–10.

- Some people are good at coming up with ideas, others are better at planning.
- I'm sure they've got a website, so I can look the address up online.
- One query came up that I couldn't answer.
- He doesn't really get on with his father.
- We can always count on Lee to get work done on time.
- My mum looks after the kids if I have to work late.
- At the end of a busy week, I just want to chill out and relax with my friends.
- I've been trying to cut down on the amount of TV the kids watch but it's a bit of battle, to be honest.
- Getting a specialist team in on the job had taken quite a bit of the budget up already.
- As the number of added extras goes up, so does the price.

b Match the phrasal verbs in exercise 3a to the patterns a–d.

- verb + particle (no object) _____
- verb + particle + object _____
- verb + object ↔ particle _____
- verb + two particles 1 _____

4a Complete sentences 1–8 using either *on* or *off*.

- Despite this setback, we're going to press _____ with our plans.
- The legal process could drag _____ for a year or more.
- Don't put _____ repairs: it could be more costly in the long run.
- Conventional light bulbs give _____ a lot of heat, which is a waste of energy.
- These workshops build _____ students' existing practical experience.
- Most dairy products will go _____ fairly quickly unless kept in the fridge.
- Biodegradable plastics have been slow to catch _____ because they're expensive to produce.
- Many agricultural vehicles can easily run _____ biodiesel.

b 8.3))) Listen, check and repeat.

5a Match the phrasal verbs in the box to the nouns 1–10 they collocate with. Decide if the nouns go either before or after the active form of the phrasal verbs.

build on catch on come up drag on ~~give off~~ go off
go up look up put off run on

- _____ milk / food go off
- _____ a new product / an idea _____
- _____ a problem / a question _____
- give off fumes / a smell
- _____ information / a word _____
- _____ negotiations / a court case _____
- _____ a meeting / an appointment _____
- _____ diesel / electricity _____
- _____ prices / standards _____
- _____ previous research / your strengths _____

b Think of an example sentence for each phrasal verb in exercise 5a.

- This milk has gone off.
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

I can ...

use participle clauses.

Very well Quite well More practice



use phrasal verbs.



8.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary formal and informal language

- 1a** Mark each sentence 1–6 as more formal (F) or more informal/neutral (I).
- Why are pupils expected to study subjects at school that have no connection with their everyday lives? ____
 - She couldn't remember what happened. ____
 - People frequently make decisions without knowing the full facts. ____
 - Most of us aren't really aware of why we choose one thing and not another. ____
 - Advertisers utilize a range of tactics to persuade consumers to buy a particular product. ____
 - Describe how writers use metaphor in literature, referring to two works you've read. ____
- b** Rewrite the sentences in exercise 1a to make them more or less formal by replacing the underlined words with phrases from the box. Make any other necessary changes.

decide on things have little awareness of
 have no memory of have nothing to do with
 make a choice of make use of on the reading list
 people talk us into the incident the use of
 we (x2) with reference to

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

- ➔ **STUDY TIP** Remember that learners' dictionaries often include *formal* and *informal* labels at particular entries. When you note down new words, check whether they are especially used in formal or informal contexts and add your own label.



Vocabulary extension

- 2a** Underline one word in each sentence that is especially formal or informal. Check any you are not sure about in a dictionary.
- We'll endeavour to have it finished before the end of the week.
 - I'm not really interested in stories about Hollywood celebs.
 - The other staff have been moaning about the new working hours.
 - Our competitors have employed some rather dishonest tactics.
 - Make sure you wear warm clothes and comfy shoes.
 - Can you just pop your PIN number in for me?
 - She politely declined his invitation to dinner.
 - We packed all our stuff in the back of the car and left.
 - A security guard accompanied them to the exit.
 - The researchers observed the animals' behaviour using remote cameras.

- b** Complete the table using words in exercise 2a.

More formal	Neutral	More informal
	celebrity	
	comfortable	
	complaining	
enter	put (in)	
	take	go with
belongings / possessions	things	
	try	have a go (at)
	turn down / say no	
	use	
	watch	keep an eye on



8.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking speculating, comparing and contrasting

1a Read the conversation. What are the speakers comparing? Which one do they like? Ignore the gaps in the conversation.

A OK, so I've got the two designs here from the freelancer. What do you think?

B Well, ¹ _____ very fresh and modern-looking. I like the colours.

A Yes, the colours are good. I'm not sure about the first one, though. What's the shape in the background? It ² _____ a tree, but I'm not sure.

B Yes, I guess it could be ³ _____ tree.

It ⁴ _____ intended to represent the company's eco principles ⁵ _____.

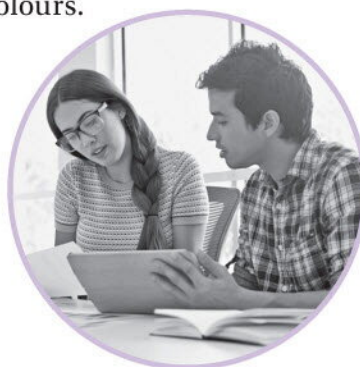
A Yes, maybe, but it's not very clear and it's not directly linked to what we do. It's ⁶ _____ people will really understand the significance. We don't want a logo that's misleading, do we?

B Yes, you're right. ⁷ _____, the second one doesn't include any images at all, it's just straightforward text. ⁸ _____ it's nice and clear, but is it striking enough?

A Personally, I really like the simplicity of the second design. The first one has quite a lot going on, ⁹ _____ this one gets straight to the point.

b Complete the conversation with phrases from the box. There are some phrases you do not need.

along the lines of by contrast doubtful if in both cases
I suppose likely to be looks like might be
or something like that some kind of they're both whereas



Writing a problem-solution-evaluation essay or report

2 Complete the extracts from an essay about the problem of infection in hospitals using options a–j.

- a an alternative option
- b another issue is that
- c this essay will explore
- d of the two
- e furthermore
- f whichever alternative is chosen
- g both of these options
- h there are several key factors
- i it would appear that the main problem
- j one way to address this problem

Controlling the spread of infection is a major challenge for all hospitals, especially with the increase in viruses that are resistant to antibiotics. ¹ _____ some of the issues that lead to the spread of infection and look at possible approaches to tackling the problem.

² _____ that lead to infection in hospitals spreading from patient to patient. Based on research, ³ _____ is transfer of viruses via contact with hospital staff. So as a nurse moves from patient to patient, so do viruses. ⁴ _____ the objects which patients and staff come into contact with can carry infection.

⁵ _____ is to improve hygiene procedures. A number of antibacterial hand gels are available which ... ⁶ _____ is to target infection spread via surfaces such as touchscreens used by medical staff. New materials that have recently been developed prevent bacteria from sticking to them. One such material mimics the properties of shark skin ...

⁷ _____ offer practical ways of cutting infection rates in hospitals and clearly, used together ... ⁸ _____, the use of bacteria resistant surfaces is perhaps the most promising, as it is less open to human error. ... ⁹ _____, these new materials are expected to be particularly durable, making it a cost-effective solution in the long term.

¹⁰ _____ in a given hospital setting, it seems clear that advances in materials science could play a key role in improving infection control in the future.

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use formal and informal language.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
speculate, compare and contrast.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write a problem-solution-evaluation essay or report.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

8.5 Listening for pleasure

The science of happiness

- 1 What makes you happy? Rank the activities according to how happy they make you feel.

- a Eating something you really like _____
- b Helping a stranger in the street _____
- c Doing a hobby _____
- d Buying the things you want _____
- e Working for your local community _____
- f Concentrating on learning a new skill _____
- g Talking to a close friend _____
- h Dedicating yourself to your job _____

- 2 8.4 » Listen to an interview with a psychologist about what really makes people happy. Decide if the activities in exercise 1 refer to pleasure (P), engagement (E) or meaning (M). There may be more than one answer.

a ___ b ___ c ___ d ___ e ___ f ___ g ___ h ___

- 3 8.4 » Listen to the interview again. Which of ideas 1–8 does the expert recommend to achieve happiness?

- 1 Get married and buy a house.
- 2 Have a hobby that keeps you engaged.
- 3 Identify the things you're not getting enough of and do more of them.
- 4 Focus on pleasure, not your career.
- 5 Spend more time with friends and relatives.
- 6 Let your mind take you to far-away places.
- 7 Do activities that help other people.
- 8 Be grateful for the things you have and the people in your life.

- 4 What can you do, or do more of, to be happier?



Review: Units 7 and 8

Grammar

- 1 Choose the best verb form in italics to complete the sentences.
- 1 It *must have taken* / *can't have taken* an enormous amount of courage for the rescue teams to set off up the mountain, not knowing if they'd make it back.
 - 2 If the inspectors *didn't notice* / *hadn't noticed* the fault with the equipment, there could easily have been a serious accident.
 - 3 If only *we'd have known* / *we'd known* about the problems earlier, we could probably have done something to help.
 - 4 If they'd realized how dangerous the currents were, I'm pretty sure they *would never have gone* / *are unlikely to have gone* swimming there.
 - 5 Just imagine Sanjay *wouldn't have been* / *hadn't been* there to help, what would have happened then?
 - 6 Some scientists believe that we *may soon be able* / *must soon be able* to prevent many serious conditions using gene therapy.
 - 7 With any pioneering new technology, you're bound *to experience* / *to have experienced* problems, but that's how you make progress.
 - 8 Initially, it looked as if the engine *would have failed* / *had failed*, but engineers later confirmed that it was just a minor electrical problem.

Vocabulary

- 2a Decide if each adjective is more likely to describe an emotion (E) or an object (O).
- 1 lightweight ____
 - 2 relieved ____
 - 3 surprised ____
 - 4 apathetic ____
 - 5 durable ____
 - 6 mortified ____
 - 7 sympathetic ____
 - 8 transparent ____
 - 9 rigid ____
 - 10 irritated ____
 - 11 absorbent ____
 - 12 self-conscious ____

- b Complete the comments using the correct form of the words from exercise 2a.

- 1 Yesterday morning, the fire alarm system in the office malfunctioned and started making a really _____ beeping noise, so it was a _____ when the engineer arrived to fix it.
- 2 We need to replace the old wooden window frames, as they're rotten. We're going for plastic frames that are cheap, _____ and easy to install, but _____ is important too, as we want them to last a long time.
- 3 I was asked an awkward question about the lack of bonus this year by an audience member at the end of the presentation that completely took me by _____, especially as the CEO was there. I felt a bit _____ in front of him and I don't think I answered it very well.
- 4 The strawberries have to be grown in polytunnels which are made of a _____ steel structure covered in _____ plastic that lets in the light while protecting the fruit from birds and insects.

Speaking

- 3 Match beginnings 1-6 to endings a-f.
- 1 I'm happy to sit outside ____
 - 2 The first hotel is right in the city centre ____
 - 3 That dish definitely has some sort of fish in it, ____
 - 4 That time sounds OK to me, ____
 - 5 Supposing I book a table anyway, ____
 - 6 We could just make a simple salad ____
- a but I'm not exactly sure which one.
b or something like that for our lunch guests.
c but I'll have to check my diary.
d provided we can find a table in the shade.
e we could always cancel it if we change our minds.
f whereas the other option is a bit more out of the way.

9.1 The best way to learn

Grammar uses of *will*

1a Choose the correct verb form in italics to complete the text.

When knowing less is more

It is often suggested that children learn far more quickly than adults because they're more open-minded. Adults think they know it all.

And recent research backs this up. Groups of young children and adults were tested on their ability to understand cause-and-effect relationships in a number of contexts that were completely new to them. The research found that given a novel problem, children ¹ *will approach / will have approached* it flexibly, trying out any number of possible solutions, whereas adults ² *will have tended to / will tend to* draw more on their existing knowledge and experience. This knowledge about how the world works can be useful because it allows us to make sensible predictions in many situations. However, it also means that people ³ *will often ignore / will often be ignoring* the evidence in front of them, falling back instead on conventional assumptions and approaches. Although we like to talk about 'thinking outside the box', in many situations, we ⁴ *will even consider / won't even consider* ideas that don't fit with our rather fixed world view and we too easily discount things we believe ⁵ *won't have worked / won't work*.

In a rapidly-changing modern world, this mindset becomes especially limiting. Consider a student at university today who learns a bunch of facts about our current state of knowledge in a particular field. By the time they get into the workforce, much of that learnt knowledge ⁶ *will have become / will become* out of date, as technology constantly moves on, and the problems ⁷ *they'll have to / they'll have had to* deal with won't be the same as the ones they studied so conscientiously in the classroom. Tomorrow's graduates ⁸ *will need to / will be needing to* be much



more open-minded and to truly be able to 'think outside the box' to solve the new problems that changing technology and circumstances will undoubtedly throw up. It seems likely that the most innovative minds of the future ⁹ *will embrace / won't embrace* an element of childlikeness. ¹⁰ *They'll take / They'll have been taking* a refreshingly naïve approach to things, ignoring what they think they know and playing around with possibilities that others have dismissed.

■ **novel** (adj) (often approving) different from anything known before; new, interesting and often seeming slightly strange

■ **mindset** (noun) a set of attitudes or fixed ideas that somebody has and that are often difficult to change

b Decide if replacing your answers in exercise 1a with the present simple gives the same meaning or a different meaning.

- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| 1 <u>same</u> | 6 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 8 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 9 _____ |
| 5 _____ | 10 _____ |

2 Complete the comments about the article using *will* or *won't* and the correct form of the verbs in brackets. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 It's quite true that young children _____ (try out) approaches to a problem that adults would have rejected without even giving them a go.
- 2 I guess it might take a child longer to work out a problem, but they _____ (probably / come up with) a solution in the end.
- 3 But don't you think most children _____ (get) bored and given up before they find the right answer?
- 4 _____ (you / send) me the link to that research? I'd like to read more about it.
- 5 I'm sure this type of research _____ (become) increasingly influential in education.
- 6 It's so true that critical thinking skills are key, but even so, right now thousands of students around the world _____ (still / memorize) lists of facts.
- 7 It seems silly that most of today's graduates who are seeking employment _____ (waste) hours learning 'facts' that'll be obsolete by the time they start work.
- 8 If employers _____ (insist on) only taking people with proven experience, then they're not going to get fresh ideas, are they?
- 9 It makes sense that if someone _____ (think) beyond tried and tested approaches, then they're not going to come up with innovative solutions.
- 10 Do you think that in the future, candidates _____ (write) 'childlike' and 'naïve' on their CVs instead of 'experienced' or 'qualified'?

- a Wow, time flies. **It won't be long till** he's going off to university.
- b Really? **I'll believe it when I see it.**
- c **We'll see.** It depends when we get the layout back from the designer.
- d You can't resign. **I simply won't hear of it.** None of this is your fault.
- e I'll check when I'm back in the office. **I'll let you know.**
- f **If you'll just** hold on a moment, I'll see if he's around.
- g Don't worry, it's all organized. It'll be fine, **you'll see.**
- h **That'll be** the book I ordered online.

b 9.1))) Listen and check your answers.

PRONUNCIATION 'll and won't

4a Underline the stressed words in the phrases in bold in exercise 3a.

b 9.2))) Listen to the extracts and check.

c 9.2))) Listen again, and repeat.

5 Rewrite sentences 1–7 replacing the words in italics with a phrase with *will* from exercise 3a.

- 1 Some teachers already get students to email their homework, so *I can foresee a time when* all student assignments are submitted electronically.
- 2 I know this a big change for some teachers, but I'm sure they'll soon get used to it. *Just wait.*
- 3 *Could you please* sign in here? I'll call Alex to let him know you're here.
- 4 I'm not sure if I'm free on Friday or not. I'll have to check my diary, *then I can tell you.*
- 5 The new timetable seems like a good idea, but I'm not convinced it'll work in practice. *We'll find out soon.*
- 6 Do you really think so? *That'll never happen!*
- 7 You mean the boy with the dark hair who's taller than his classmates? *I expect that's* Jose.

Vocabulary idiomatic phrases with *will*

3a Match comments 1–8 to the most appropriate replies a–h.

- 1 Apparently, the college is going to get tablet computers for all students to use in class. ____
- 2 A parcel arrived for you this morning. ____
- 3 Can I speak to Mr Williams, please? ____
- 4 Are there any spaces left on the Spanish course? ____
- 5 Do you think the brochures for the new course are going to be ready for next month? ____
- 6 I'm not so sure that taking a class of eight-year-olds to the theatre is such a good idea. ____
- 7 I'm thinking of handing in my notice. I feel as if I'm in an impossible situation. ____
- 8 George is starting his final year of school this year. ____

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
use <i>will</i> in different ways.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use idiomatic phrases with <i>will</i> .	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

9.2 The future of higher education

Vocabulary higher education

1 Match beginnings 1–12 to endings a–l.

- 1 The size of the average **student** ____
 - 2 We want to create an environment where both home and **international** ____
 - 3 The course will be delivered in **blended** ____
 - 4 This figure doesn't include students enrolled at **offshore** ____
 - 5 As well as more academic courses, the college offers **vocational** ____
 - 6 The board has been set up to oversee **quality** ____
 - 7 Tutors monitor progress using the assessment tools available in the **virtual** ____
 - 8 Many young people benefit from the experience of spending a **year** ____
 - 9 We provide opportunities for students to achieve **external** ____
 - 10 Campus rents and university **tuition** ____
 - 11 The theatre established a two-year **apprenticeship** ____
 - 12 The challenges facing **mature** ____
- a **campuses** that Australian universities have set up in Malaysia, Singapore and Dubai.
 - b **loan** has increased by an average of 4.1% each year.
 - c **assurance** procedures in the state's universities.
 - d **accreditation** through a number of internationally-recognized exams.
 - e **scheme** for theatre electricians and set designers.
 - f **fees** are both scheduled to increase again next year.
 - g **learning environment** that's used across the university.
 - h **students** returning to full-time education differ from those faced by school leavers.
 - i **abroad** before they start their university or college studies.
 - j **training** in a range of areas from hairdressing to construction.
 - k **learning** mode with six on-campus days per academic year together with online study.
 - l **students** feel at home and can focus on their studies.

2 Match the phrases in bold in exercise 1 to the comments 1–12.

- 1 I work for a UK university, but I'm based at their Medical School in Malaysia. offshore campus
- 2 We provide training within the company for young people wanting to become plumbers. _____
- 3 I did my first degree in my home city, Beijing, and now I'm doing a Masters at a university in Germany. _____
- 4 Students come into the university one or two days a week for seminars and tutorials, but the rest of their studying is online. _____
- 5 You can log on to check reading lists, to download lecture slides or to send a message to your tutor. _____
- 6 The average cost per year to study in the UK at undergraduate level as an international student is £11,987. _____
- 7 The qualifications are officially recognized because they've been independently checked. _____
- 8 When I left school, I started working in the family shop, but after a few years, I decided to go to university to study business. _____
- 9 My parents gave me some financial help when I went to university, but I had to borrow quite a bit, too. _____
- 10 All the courses offered by the university have to follow strict guidelines to make sure they meet a high standard. _____
- 11 It was a great opportunity to experience a different country and a different culture, and I had lots of fun, too! _____
- 12 We have lots of practical, hands-on workshops to get to grips with the skills we're going to need when we start work. _____



Grammar the future

- 3 Choose the best form of the verbs in *italics* to complete the sentences.
- From next year, tuition fees are set *to increase / for increasing* by an average of 8% for home students.
 - Our department is about *to introduce / introducing* computer-based testing for some courses.
 - Most students already submit work electronically and we're on the point *to scrap / of scrapping* paper-based assignments altogether.
 - The introduction of higher fees for international students is sure *to have / will have* an effect on applications.
 - We already use a mix of classroom and online teaching, but we plan *to develop / developing* a wider range of blended learning options over the next few years.
 - The university is due *to open / for opening* a new offshore campus in Thailand next year.
 - The introduction of more English medium courses at the university is expected *to attract / that it will attract* more international students.
 - The university has grown really rapidly and we're now on the verge *to become / of becoming* the largest educational institution in Asia.
 - We're committed to education for all and we aim *to recruit / for recruiting* students from all social and economic backgrounds.
 - Apparently, the government *is to announce / will have announced* plans next year for two new academic research centres.

- 4a Complete the comments with the correct form of the verbs and phrases from the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

aim to be on the point of be set to expect hope
plan will be able to will give will have will have to
will record will replace

In recent years, universities across Europe, like ours here in Poland, have been seeing an increase in the number of international students and I think that trend ¹ is expected to continue. One consequence of this is that more programmes are being taught through the medium of English. My own department has been running some courses in English for a few years, but now we ² _____ going over completely to instruction through English. So from next year, tutors ³ _____ all their lectures in English and students ⁴ _____ submit all their written assignments in English, too.

The biggest change going on in higher education at the moment has to be the use of technology. Here at my college, individual staff have been increasingly employing digital media in their teaching over recent years, but after a lot of investment and with all the technology now in place, the college ⁵ _____ introduce a virtual learning environment from this September that all students ⁶ _____ access to. Our department ⁷ _____ to use the platform to deliver more course content digitally. So, for example, we ⁸ _____ lectures for students to watch online. At first, we ⁹ _____ make them available as a kind of catch-up facility, either for students who missed a lecture or those who just want to watch again. But ultimately, we ¹⁰ _____ to deliver our lectures entirely online, so that in a few years' time traditional lectures ¹¹ _____ altogether by online videos. That means that students ¹² _____ make use of their face-to-face time with staff for more interactive classes and workshops.

- b Put the words in the right order to form three questions about each comment in exercise 4a.

- language support / providing / for students / be / Will / more / the department ?

- don't use / to universities / to / that / Are / some home students / you / lose / expecting / English ?

- switch to / instruction / other / plan / Do / to / departments / English-only ?

- is / new / environment / to / When / go live / the / due / virtual / to / learning ?

- online / lectures / be / Will / streaming / you / live ?

- entirely / will / in / been / think / replaced / Do / face-to-face learning / have / a few years' time / you ?

I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

talk about higher education.

☐ ☐ ☐

talk about the future.

☐ ☐ ☐

9.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary three ways to create new words

1a Complete sentences 1–12 with words from the box.

chillax conventional e-banking e-cigarettes
e-reader guesstimate hard land m-ticketing
regular staycation tap



- 1 If you can't get me on my mobile, then try my _____ line.
- 2 There's some debate over whether _____ should also be banned in no-smoking areas.
- 3 Our best _____ would be that fraud costs us somewhere around \$5,000 a year.
- 4 Would you like _____ or decaf coffee?
- 5 More people than ever are opting for a _____ and holidaying at home.
- 6 The introduction of _____ has reduced queues at train stations.
- 7 With the growth of _____, some customers never need to visit their local branch.
- 8 It has a modern fitted kitchen with a fridge-freezer, a microwave and a _____ oven.
- 9 I don't have any special plans for the weekend, I'm just going to _____ at home.
- 10 You don't need to carry a pile of heavy books on holiday now, you can just download everything onto an _____.
- 11 Could we just get a jug of _____ water, please?
- 12 You can also get a _____ copy of the report on request.

b Put the words in exercise 1a into the correct category.

- a prefix added _____
- b a retronym 1 _____
- c a blend of two words _____

Vocabulary extension

➔ **STUDY TIP** Some words that are more frequently used as nouns can also be used as verbs. This is another way in which new words are created. If you come across a familiar noun used in an unusual way, you might find it is being used as a verb.

■ I've *messaged* you about it (= sent you a message).

2a Match beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h.

- 1 He was stopped by the police because he was *texting* ____
 - 2 He's one of the young athletes hoping to *medal* ____
 - 3 A number of the report's recommendations have been *actioned* ____
 - 4 The meeting wasn't *minuted*, ____
 - 5 The company has consulted conservation groups in an attempt to *green* ____
 - 6 The event was recorded and will be *podcast* ____
 - 7 Sales of desktops have been *trending* ____
 - 8 The presentation was *bookended* ____
- a so there's no record of what was said.
 - b by two short video clips.
 - c while driving.
 - d by management already.
 - e via our website.
 - f at the 2020 Olympics.
 - g downwards for some time.
 - h its business practices.

b Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in *italics* from exercise 2a.

- 1 Some lectures are now being _____ on the university's website.
- 2 I think the venue's on the main square, but I'll _____ you the exact address.
- 3 The dining area is _____ by an open kitchen on one side and a long wooden bar on the other.
- 4 All suggestions were _____ and published in the proceedings.
- 5 Large producers are reluctant to _____ their products unless they can charge a premium.
- 6 In Toronto, she _____ in the 200 metres and the sprint relay.
- 7 The department will be _____ all the report's recommendations in the coming months.
- 8 Property prices have been _____ upwards for the past eighteen months.

c 9.3) Listen and check your answers.

9.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking giving a presentation

1a 9.4 Listen to a short presentation about the global growth of higher education. Tick the two potential problems the speaker mentions.

- 1 There won't be enough graduate-level jobs for the increasing number of graduates. ____
- 2 Economic growth is only happening in certain countries, leading to greater inequality. ____
- 3 Universities will not be able to expand quickly enough to meet demand for places. ____
- 4 Lack of funding and qualified staff could lead to lower standards. ____

b Complete the extracts from the presentation using phrases from the box. Add any extra words that are needed.

broadly speaking first of all I'd now like to no denying
not everyone sees only time will tell take the view
to a great extent will focus

- 1 This presentation _____ the dramatic growth in the number of people entering higher education ...
- 2 _____, I'd like to look at some statistics.
- 3 _____, that growth has come from countries like China and India ...
- 4 Having looked at a few figures, _____ consider the effects of this trend.
- 5 _____, widening access to higher education is seen as a positive thing.
- 6 However, _____ this higher education boom in such a positive light.
- 7 Some experts _____ encouraging too many young people to pursue a degree-level education will lead to higher levels of graduate unemployment.
- 8 _____ a growing number of students in some countries, accompanied by a lack of adequate funding and not enough qualified staff might result in lower standards.
- 9 However, _____ greater participation in higher education is set to continue ...

c 9.4 Listen again and check your answers.

Writing discourse markers

2a Match beginnings 1-7 to endings a-g to make sentences from a report based on the presentation in exercise 1a.

- 1 This report will consider the global growth in higher education ____
 - 2 A significant share of the growth in this area has come ____
 - 3 It is quite clear that widening access to higher education ____
 - 4 There are some, especially in political circles, who believe that expanding higher education is the key to economic growth, but ____
 - 5 It goes without saying that for an expansion in higher education provision to succeed, ____
 - 6 If the current trend continues, ____
 - 7 Of course, we can't overlook the potential risks associated with a rapidly-growing higher education sector, ____
- a there is also the potential danger of graduate unemployment, where the number of qualified workers exceeds the number of graduate-level jobs available.
 - b institutions need adequate funding to recruit and train staff, as well as to develop their facilities.
 - c and look at some of its potential effects.
 - d from countries such as China and India, where there has been rapid economic growth in recent years.
 - e student numbers worldwide could reach 262 million by 2025.
 - f can bring huge potential benefits to individuals in terms of social and economic development.
 - g yet millions more young people globally look set to benefit from access to a university-level education and all the benefits that can bring.



I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand three ways to create new words.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
give a presentation.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use discourse markers in writing.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

10.1 New ways to pay

Grammar noun phrases

1a Read the text. Make noun phrases from the prompts in the box and use them to complete the text. Make any necessary changes to the noun phrases.

- the premise / most apps
- the hassle / get / your mobile out of your pocket
- ~~new and simpler ways~~ / consumers / ~~pay for goods~~
- their share / the bill
- the capability / accept / card payments
- the headphone jack / their smartphone
- awkward conversations / who / have the right change
- a percentage / each transaction
- the checkout / a shop / accept payments
- a limit / how much / can / paid
- without the need / them / enter their PIN
- two of the wearable tech options / been / trial

Five new ways to pay

The financial industry is forever trying to find

¹ *new and simpler ways for consumers to pay for goods.*

Which of these have you tried?

1 Contactless card payments have become more widespread in recent years. They enable people to make payments using their credit or debit card ² _____. The customer simply has to put their contactless card near the card reader and the payment is authorized. For security reasons, there's generally ³ _____ using this method, but for small amounts, it's quick and simple.

2 Mobile apps, which allow you to transfer money direct from your bank, offer an alternative method of paying for things which means you don't even need to carry your bank card with you. ⁴ _____ currently on the market is that both customer and vendor have to be signed up for the scheme. When you reach ⁵ _____, a special code is sent to your mobile phone showing the details of the payment. You simply accept or reject the transaction and the payment goes through.

3 Wearable technology is promising to do away with ⁶ _____. A pre-programmed digital chip can be embedded into almost any item of clothing, so that the customer just has to wave it in front of a reader. Wristbands and gloves are ⁷ _____ so far.



4 Peer-to-peer payment apps allow you to pay money direct to your friends. It works by linking a person's mobile phone number to their bank details and lets you make payments to anyone in your contacts list. Imagine, no more ⁸ _____ when you're splitting the bill in a restaurant. One person pays using their card and everyone else just transfers over ⁹ _____.

5 Vendor apps are designed for very small businesses and those who need to take occasional payments but don't have ¹⁰ _____ in the regular way. They get a tiny card that plugs into ¹¹ _____ and acts as a credit-card reader. The app itself is free, but charges ¹² _____. It's perfect for everyone from babysitters to piano teachers.

- 2a** Match sentence beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h, using a preposition from the box to link them. Some prepositions are used more than once.

about between for in of to

- 1 I've got a contactless card and I've never had any difficulty in c
 - 2 With contactless cards, there could be a risk _____
 - 3 I think if I had a choice _____
 - 4 Payment apps have really good security controls so there's no reason _____
 - 5 There's been quite a bit of debate _____
 - 6 PayPal is just one of the big-name companies _____
 - 7 I'm not sure I really see the point _____
 - 8 As an artist, this technology is opening up new opportunities _____
- a users to worry about how safe they are.
 b wearable tech to pay with. It's just more stuff to carry round.
 c using it. It's really simple.
 d whether peer-to-peer payment apps will really catch on.
 e paying by card or using a mobile app, I'd probably just use my phone.
 f me to sell my work without always having to ask people for cash.
 g have cornered the mobile payment market.
 h paying for something accidentally if your card's too near a reader.

b 10.1 » Listen and check your answers.

c 10.1 » Listen again and repeat.

Vocabulary money

- 3** Complete the texts with the correct form of the words or phrases from the box. Two words are not used.

allow funding go overdrawn hard-up lose luxuries
make ends meet manage unpaid well-off withdraw

“ My family were never very ¹ _____, but we had enough money to get by. When my parents got paid at the end of the month, there was usually a bit of spare cash around for a few little ² _____, like sweets and toys for us kids. But I remember when my father lost his job and things got more difficult. My parents did their best to ³ _____ what little money they had coming in from my Mum's part-time job, but I know they really struggled to ⁴ _____. We had a tough year or so, but thankfully, Dad finally found work again and the family finances got back on track. ”

“ When I first set up my digital training business, I managed to get some ⁵ _____ as part of a government technology initiative. I drew up a business plan and I ⁶ _____ a certain amount of money each month for expenses, marketing and other costs. In the early days, I did some ⁷ _____ training sessions for local companies just to demonstrate what I could offer and to build up a reputation. Some months, I ⁸ _____, but never beyond a manageable amount. I didn't make a big profit in my first year, but at least I didn't ⁹ _____ any money. From there, things have steadily built up each year. ”

- 4** Rewrite the sentences replacing the underlined parts with words or phrases from exercise 3. Make any other necessary changes.

- 1 She grew up in a fairly wealthy family.

- 2 Before university, he spent a year doing voluntary work on a conservation project.

- 3 The new government has promised increased investment in education.

- 4 You can take out up to €300 a day from an ATM using your debit card.

- 5 I don't like getting into debt with the bank, but sometimes, when there's an unexpected expense, I can't avoid it.

- 6 Make sure you budget enough money for testing the website before it goes live.

I can ...

recognize and use noun phrases (2).

talk about money.

Very well Quite well More practice



10.2 Live!

Grammar position of adverbials

1a 10.2 » Listen to two people describing experiences that gave them a new perspective on something. For each speaker, choose one statement a–c which best expresses the lasting impact of their experiences.

- 1
 - a She realized she wanted to pursue a career as an actor.
 - b She came to view the film industry in a new light.
 - c She was impressed by the technical aspects of film-making.
- 2
 - a He learnt of the scale of the engineering challenge involved in supplying water to desert regions.
 - b He had the opportunity to experience a lifestyle very different from his own.
 - c He came to appreciate how much impact the natural environment can have on people's lives.

b Put the adverbs or adverbials in brackets in a suitable position in the extracts from exercise **1a**. There may be more than one possible answer.

At first,

- 1 I was really excited about maybe getting to meet some of the famous cast ... (at first)
- 2 It was amazing to see how the cameramen captured shots ... (from every angle)
- 3 I loved watching all the technical expertise that went into creating exactly what the director was looking for. (carefully)
- 4 I enjoyed watching the more mundane stuff, like the wardrobe people, the make-up artists and the catering crew preparing meals for all those people. (even)

- 5 In the end, I think I appeared on screen for about four seconds ... (only)
- 6 The whole experience gave me a totally new perspective on the film industry. (just)
- 7 I can't watch a movie without thinking about everything that went into making it. (still)
- 8 I was lucky enough to go to work on a small-scale project aimed at using renewable energy ... (for two months / to Tunisia)
- 9 It was a fascinating project, using some really innovative techniques. (from an engineering perspective)
- 10 I can remember waking and looking out on an absolutely breathtaking landscape. (vividly / on my first morning / still)
- 11 It was so unlike anything I'd seen before ... (ever)
- 12 I'd been told that we'd be able to work in the mornings and evenings ... (only)
- 13 But what caught me by surprise was how the temperature dropped. (after sunset / so dramatically / really)
- 14 And of course, the extremes of the environment affected how people lived. (hugely / there)
- 15 ... and seeing how water use had to be managed gave all the more motivation to make the project a success. (carefully / actually)

- 2 10.3))) Choose the best explanation for the sentences you hear.

Sentences 1 and 2

- a It doesn't come with anything else included. _____
b The other models don't come with a carry case. _____

Sentences 3 and 4

- a Even though they complained about it at the time. _____
b They had lots of fun. _____

Sentences 5 and 6

- a Other people, non-participants, can't add their comments. _____
b They can't participate using video or audio. _____

Sentences 7, 8 and 9

- a I'm not collecting her afterwards. _____
b Nobody else. _____
c Nowhere else. _____

Vocabulary new and old

- 3 Are these sentences describing something old (O) or new (N)?
- The interior of the hotel is the last word in style and comfort. _____
 - As you step inside the clinic's reception, you realize it's quite a departure from the norm. _____
 - Many of the skills they learnt in college have already become obsolete. _____
 - Some of the techniques being used in the construction process are really breaking new ground. _____
 - Unfortunately, the data on which the research was based is already somewhat dated. _____
 - She's widely seen as a pioneer in this emerging field of research. _____
 - As head of department, he's introduced a number of innovations in working procedures. _____
 - Brightly coloured backpacks are just so last year. _____

- 4 Complete the texts using words or phrases from the box.

breaking new ground dated departure developments
innovation obsolete pioneers recondition
revolutionize the last word

A lot of the digital gadgets we all use nowadays, like laptops, tablets and mobile phones, have a very short life expectancy. Within a year or so, they're starting to look a bit



1 _____ as shiny new models with extra features come out. Then, after just two or three years, they're virtually 2 _____ because new apps will no longer work on older operating systems. Often the actual hardware is still perfectly fine though. So we set up a business to 3 _____ old computers and laptops. We install new operating systems and upgrade memory and processors so that the old hardware is able to run the latest apps.

The competition was originally set up to encourage

4 _____ within the field of engineering. We especially look out for ideas which will be seen as positive 5 _____ that really will contribute to society, rather than just being trendy gimmicks. Some of our past winners have included 6 _____ in areas as diverse as robotic limbs and solar-powered water filters.

Skipchen is a bit of a 7 _____ from your average restaurant – all the food they serve is salvaged from supermarket skips! The staff go around and collect food which has been thrown out because it's reached its sell-by date, but which is still perfectly safe to eat.



The founders of the project say they want to 8 _____ the way we deal with food waste. Up until now, much of this food has just been thrown away or, at best, used as animal feed. The venture is certainly 9 _____ but it has its critics, not least the supermarkets. It is, however, growing in popularity and in certain circles, a meal at *Skipchen* has become 10 _____ in ethical eating.

I can ...

understand the position of adverbials.

Very well Quite well More practice



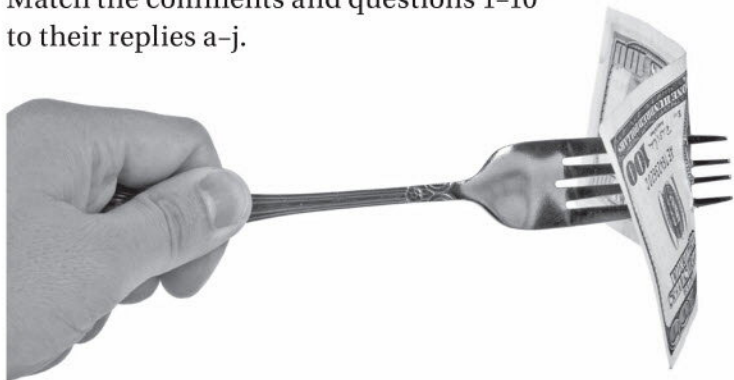
talk about new and old.



10.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary understanding idioms

- 1 Match the comments and questions 1–10 to their replies a–j.



- 1 I've just had to fork out for new tyres for the car. ____
 - 2 Replacing these windows is going to be easier said than done. ____
 - 3 A number of local businesses have gone under lately. ____
 - 4 It seems like quite an economically deprived area. ____
 - 5 I'm only being paid for the time I spend with clients, not for my travel time. ____
 - 6 Well, on the face of it, it sounds like a good deal. ____
 - 7 So what are the benefits of staff all having tablets? ____
 - 8 After his performance last week, I think he'll take some beating. ____
 - 9 The audience reaction was indifferent, to say the least. ____
 - 10 Do you think you can get your hands on an original replacement part? ____
- a We've got all the information we need at our fingertips even when we're out of the office.
 - b Oh dear, so have there been a lot of job losses?
 - c So, you think he'll go on to win the title, then?
 - d Do you think there might be hidden costs, though?
 - e They're quite hard to find nowadays, but I know a few specialist dealers I can try.
 - f Yes, a lot of people here are forced to live from hand to mouth.
 - g Oh dear, it didn't go well, then.
 - h It sounds like you're getting a bit of a raw deal to me.
 - i Yes, I realize it's going to be a tricky job because they're not a standard size.
 - j Were they very expensive?

Vocabulary extension

- ➔ **STUDY TIP** Some idioms are completely fixed in their form, but others can vary. Check in your dictionary to find out whether one part of an idiom can change. Note down alternative forms.

■ *lay/get your hands on something*

- 2a Match the idioms in bold in sentences 1–6 to meanings a–f.

- 1 With her curly blonde hair and colourful dresses she **stuck out like a sore thumb** amongst her dark-suited male colleagues. ____
 - 2 We need to revise legislation in some areas to **keep up with the times**. ____
 - 3 Honestly, I'd never **set eyes on** the man before today. ____
 - 4 The new measures are unlikely to **make a significant dent in** the debt problem. ____
 - 5 Tax-free savings accounts are a good way to **save something for a rainy day**. ____
 - 6 Taking legal action can **cost the earth** and drag on for years. ____
- a see someone/something
 - b be very/excessively expensive
 - c be immediately very noticeable
 - d stay up to date
 - e keep some money in case of future problems or emergencies
 - f reduce the size or scale of something

- b Decide which verbs in the box can be used in the idioms 1–6 from exercise 2a. Which verbs change the meaning of the idioms?

charge lay move put put aside stand

- | | change/
no change? |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1 stick / <u>stand</u> out like a sore thumb | <u>no change</u> |
| 2 keep up / _____ with the times | _____ |
| 3 set / _____ eyes on | _____ |
| 4 make / _____ a dent in | _____ |
| 5 save / _____ something for a rainy day | _____ |
| 6 cost / _____ the earth | _____ |

10.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking reaching a consensus

- 1a 10.4 » Listen to a discussion and complete the minutes.

Keeping the community up to date

Small amount of funding is available from 1 _____

Suggestions:

1 2 _____

Pros: can display the latest news and 3 _____ to other relevant information

Cons: may not be accessible to all, especially 4 _____ residents

2 5 _____ outside the newsagent's

Pros: accessible to everyone

Cons: could get 6 _____ (needs glass cover/lock?)

Decision: 7 _____

options are possible within the budget – information posted online can easily be printed out and the 8 _____ can be put on the 9 _____.

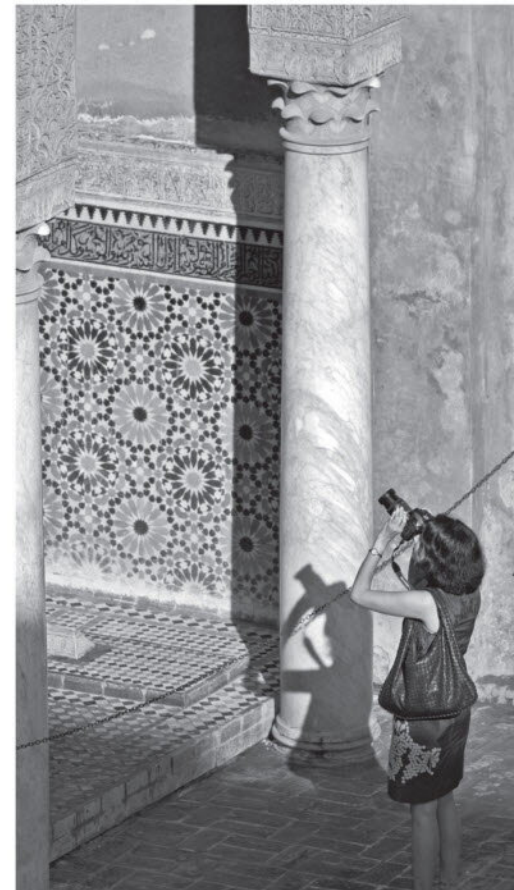
- b Complete the extracts from the discussion.

- 1 Personally, I'd go for a website.
- 2 I understand _____. That would work really well for some people, but what about the older residents?
- 3 It might _____ just to have a simple noticeboard ...
- 4 Nicki, _____ feeling on this?
- 5 Well, _____ be that we do both.
- 6 I think you could _____, then everyone would be able to access the information ...
- 7 And if you _____, if you're posting some information on the website, it's not that difficult to just print out a hard copy ...
- 8 OK, that's _____ then. I'll look into getting a noticeboard ...

- c 10.4 » Listen again and check.

Writing an email enquiry

- 2 Put sentence parts a–o in a logical order to make an email enquiry about a photography trip.
- a my photography skills are currently _____
 - b if the trip is suitable for beginners? _____
 - c Regards _____
 - d more information about the photography trip to Marrakesh advertised on your website. _____
 - e I'd like to learn _____
 - f I would be grateful if you could _____
 - g I am writing to ask for _____ 1
 - h I'm very interested in photography, but _____
 - i how to use my digital SLR camera properly _____
 - j Looking forward to _____
 - k and to improve the quality of the photos I take. _____
 - l I wonder if you could tell me _____
 - m send me further details about the trip generally. _____
 - n very much at beginner level. _____
 - o hearing from you. _____



I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand idioms.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
reach a consensus.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write an email enquiry.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

10.5 Reading for pleasure

Mindfulness

- 1 Read the definition. How mindful do you think you are in your work, studies and personal life?
- 2 Read the article to find out more about the topic.

mindfulness (n): A mental state achieved by focusing one's awareness on the present moment, while calmly acknowledging and accepting one's feelings, thoughts and bodily sensations. Used as a therapeutic technique.

Mindfulness at work: what are the benefits?

Mindfulness. Everybody's doing it. From Google to the NHS and Transport for London. Even Harvard Business School includes mindfulness principles in its leadership programmes.

So what is mindfulness? In its simplest form, mindfulness means awareness. Practising mindfulness offers a way to pay attention to the present moment, without judgement.

Mindfulness can help to reduce stress and anxiety and conflict, and increase resilience and emotional intelligence, while improving communication in the workplace.

When trying to decide whether you are mindful, consider the following points. In the last week have you found yourself:

- Unable to remember what others have said during conversations?
- With no recollection of your daily commute?
- Eating at your desk without tasting your food?
- Paying more attention to your iPhone than to your nearest and dearest?
- Dwelling on past events or dreading what the future holds?
- Skim reading this article?

If you answered yes, the chances are that you're zoning out on a regular basis, spending at least some time on autopilot.

In the current economic climate, employees are being asked to do more with less, working long hours with

increasingly heavy workloads. Leading mindfulness academic, Mark Williams, professor of clinical psychology at the University of Oxford, says working in a culture where stress is a badge of honour is counterproductive. 'We can spend so much time rushing from one task to another. We may think we're working more efficiently, but as far as the brain is concerned, we are working against the grain. No wonder we get exhausted.'

The neurological benefits of mindfulness have been linked to an increase in emotional intelligence, specifically empathy and self regulation. It's the development of these areas that contributes to our ability to manage conflict and communicate more effectively. Mindfulness also enables us to take a step back and consider alternative perspectives rather than simply reacting to events and using the least intelligent area of our brains to make decisions. Mindfulness helps us to flick the switch back to the smart parts of our brain to put us back in control of our emotions, enabling us to choose a more appropriate response.

Mindfulness expert Mirabai Bush, famous for introducing it to Google, says: 'Introducing mindfulness into the workplace does not prevent conflict from arising or difficult issues from coming up. But when difficult issues do arise ... they are more likely to be skillfully acknowledged, held, and responded to by the group. Over time with mindfulness, we learn to develop

the inner resources that will help us navigate through difficult, trying, and stressful situations with more ease, comfort and grace.

Becoming more aware of your own emotions as they arise gives you more choice in how to deal with them. Mindfulness helps you become more aware of an arising emotion by noticing the sensation in the body. Then you can follow these guidelines: stop what you are doing. Breathe deeply. Notice how you are experiencing the emotion in your body. Reflect on where the emotion is coming from in your mind (personal history, insecurity, etc.). Respond in the most compassionate way.'

Regular practice of mindfulness increases the brain's ability to repair itself and grow new neural connections. But the use it or lose it approach to physical exercise also applies to our brains, so it's important to practise.

Gill Crossland-Thackray, a business psychologist, recommends a simple technique that anyone can try: the one minute meditation. Find a quiet place and focus your attention on your breath. If your mind wanders (as it probably will), bring your concentration back to your breath. Then relax as the calm unfolds.

- **NHS** = the National Health Service, which is the public health sector in the UK.
- **Transport for London** = a local government organization who are responsible for most aspects of London's public transport system.

- 3 How many of the questions in the article did you say yes to? What can you do to be more mindful in your work/studies?

Review: Units 9 and 10

Grammar

- 1 Complete the sentences using an appropriate form of the verbs in brackets.
- When we play our final gig in Stockholm this May, we _____ twelve different countries on this tour. (will / visit)
 - We've been selling our products online for a while and we're now on the point of _____ our first bricks-and-mortar store. (open)
 - The new version of the app is being tested at the moment and they expect _____ it in the next couple of months. (release)
 - Just about now, Zaynab _____ into her interview. I hope she gets the job. (will / go)
- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- carried out / We're / to / the first / in this area / research / have / team

 - computer modelling / disease / the idea / He / using / pioneered / of / to research

 - a lot of / There / whether / has been / discussion / are credible / about / the results

 - patients / There's clearly / understand more / a need / about / for / to / the condition

Vocabulary

- 3 Complete the article with words and phrases from the box. There are some words you do not need.

forked out funding go overdrawn go under international luxuries
make ends meet offshore raw deal tuition fees student loans

The price of a decent education

The cost of higher education around the world varies hugely. In countries where students have to pay ¹_____, the costs can really add up. The lucky ones might be able to get ²_____ in the form of scholarships and grants, whilst others have to take out ³_____ to cover the cost of their courses. And then there are living costs to take into account, too. Once you've ⁴_____ for rent, bills, food and other essentials, there's little cash left over for ⁵_____. As a result, many students end up taking part-time jobs just to ⁶_____. And the situation for ⁷_____ students can be even tougher. Not only do they often have to pay higher fees than home students, which many feel is a bit of a ⁸_____, but they also lack the support of family nearby to help them out.

- 4 Match the people and situations 1–6 to the best descriptions a–f.
- Valentina Tereshkova was the first woman in space. _____
 - No one uses video recorders anymore. _____
 - No one has ever tried to make the journey in a solar-powered vehicle before. _____
 - The special effects in the movies of the 80s seem rather unsophisticated compared to today. _____
 - As a young actress, she never had much money. _____
 - In theory, you could build a car using a 3D printer, but there are many challenges involved. _____
- She was a pioneer.
 - She lived from hand to mouth.
 - It's easier said than done.
 - It's breaking new ground.
 - They look dated.
 - They're obsolete.

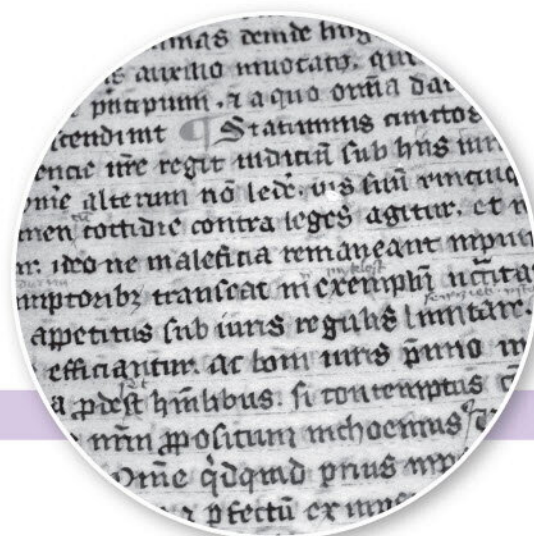
Speaking

- 5 Complete the presentation extracts 1–5 using an appropriate form of the verbs from the box. There are some verbs you do not need. There may be more than one possible answer.

deny disagree focus look move see
speak start turn

- This presentation _____ on the challenges faced by mature students at university level.
- I'd like to _____ by looking at what exactly we mean by a 'mature student'.
- Generally _____, mature students have a clearer idea of what they want to get out of their course.
- _____ on to the practical challenges that older students face when they return to education ...
- There can be no _____ that juggling full-time study with family commitments can be difficult.

11.1 Origins of language



Grammar adjective position

1a Put the adjectives in the boxes into a suitable position in the highlighted parts of the text. Make any other necessary changes.

conflicting mere used well-known

well-known

¹ English is *for* borrowing words from other languages.
² There are estimates of the number of loan words in English, but it is said that around 26% of English words are from Germanic origins, about 29% come from Latin, ³ many of these being words largely in medical, scientific and legal contexts, and roughly another 29% come from French. Of the remainder, something like 6% are derived from Greek, 4% are derived from proper names, and ⁴ a 6% come from other languages.

large ruling unsurprising

The rate at which words have come into English from different sources has varied greatly over time, though. ⁵ A proportion of the French words that are now part of the English language arrived as a result of the Norman Conquest in 1066. ⁶ The subsequent impact of French during the 13th and 14th centuries is perhaps as ⁷ it was the language of the classes in the UK in this period and dominated written texts of the time.

new significant scholarly

⁸ Latin has long been a strong influence in circles, first in religious texts and then reaching its peak in the 17th century with the Enlightenment, ⁹ when over a quarter of words had Latin roots.
¹⁰ Greek also started to have an impact at this time with its popularity in the creation of new technical and scientific terms.

existing recent rich prominent

¹¹ Perhaps the most striking thing to note, though, is that despite its heritage, the majority of new words that now come into English are actually derived from English roots, ¹² and in centuries, ¹³ the influence of languages like French, Latin and Greek has become less. In the 20th century, over 70% of new words formed actually had English origins. So instead of being direct loans from other languages, ¹⁴ around three-quarters of new words were simply created by combining words, such as *double-glazing* and *motel*. More recent additions include things like *staycation* and *infotainment*.

familiar found likely responsible

In many parts of the world where English is spoken, ¹⁵ the terms for indigenous plants and animals are to have been borrowed from local languages. So the names of many Australian animals, such as *kangaroo* or *koala* are derived from their aboriginal equivalents. And ¹⁶ the indigenous languages of the Americas are for ¹⁷ the now names of ¹⁸ many foodstuffs originally there, such as *avocado*, *chocolate*, *chilli* and *tomato*.

- **The Norman Conquest:** the invasion of England in 1066 by the French king, William of Normandy, who became William I of England.
- **The Enlightenment:** a period in Europe in the 18th century when writers and scholars began to explore new ideas in science and modern reasoning.

b Choose the best words in italics to complete the statements about the text in exercise 1a.

- Many French words became part of English after *the Norman Conquest / the Enlightenment*.
- A lot of technical and scientific words came into English from *German / Greek*.
- The majority of new words coming into English nowadays have *foreign / English* roots.
- Around the world, the words for indigenous plants and animals have frequently been borrowed from *American / local* languages.



2 11.1 Listen to comments 1–10 and match the meaning of the adjectives in bold to the best synonym or paraphrase *a* or *b*.

responsible	1 a be the cause or source of 2 b trustworthy and reliable
economic	3 a to do with trade, industry and wealth 4 b to do with making or saving money
present	5 a happening now 6 b existing in a particular place or thing
conscious	7 a deliberate and controlled 8 b awake
concerned	9 a worried 10 b involved

3 Complete the sentences with an adjective in bold from exercise 2.

- It was clear to everyone _____ at the event that Alexa wasn't her normal cheerful self.
- We made a _____ decision to make a film that would appeal to a wide audience.
- At that time, the country was facing serious _____ problems.
- A _____ neighbour called the police when the burglar alarm went off.
- It can be difficult to identify the factors _____ for the success or failure of new products.

Vocabulary adjectives and adverbs beginning with *a-*

4 Complete sentences 1–8 with words from the box.

afloat afraid alert alike alive alone awake awash

- Exercise not only keeps you physically fit, but more mentally _____.
- Cities around the world are starting to look _____ with the same high-street stores and fast-food outlets.
- Minority languages can play a key role in keeping cultures _____.
- Junior staff seemed _____ to raise concerns about malpractice.
- I put out the light and lay _____ for a while thinking about the day's events.
- Annabelle stayed on _____ in the house for a few days after the others had left.
- The company was _____ with rumours that the managing director had resigned.
- The business has only stayed _____ thanks to the hard work of the staff putting in extra hours.

5 Rewrite the sentences replacing the phrases in italics with an adjective from exercise 4a and the verb in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.

- No two students *are exactly the same* and inevitably they learn at slightly different rates. (be)

- The virus can *live* for several weeks and can be carried on contaminated clothing and equipment. (stay)

- If children are constantly corrected, they can *start to feel anxious about* making mistakes. (become)

- I was exhausted and I couldn't have *kept my eyes open* much longer. (stay)

- Animals which are hunted by predators must *be on their guard* at all times, using their excellent sense of smell, hearing and sight. (remain)

- A lot of small businesses have struggled to *continue trading* through the recession. (keep)

I can ...

understand adjective position.

Very well Quite well More practice

☐ ☐ ☐

use adjectives and adverbs beginning with *a-*.

☐ ☐ ☐

11.2 Origins of world food

Grammar *whoever, whatever, wherever, no matter*

- 1 Complete the sentences using words from the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

whatever whenever wherever whichever whoever

- You can spend your money on _____ you like.
- _____ came up with this recipe, it's delicious.
- Generally, the kids will eat _____ I give them: they're not fussy, thankfully.
- You can choose _____ flavour you like: they're all the same price.
- _____ I'm in Switzerland, I always have to have a cheese fondue.
- We use local ingredients _____ possible.
- I usually have a snack mid-afternoon: some biscuits or chocolate or _____.
- Sandwiches are so popular because you can eat them _____ you want.

- 2a Rewrite the sentences replacing the phrases in italics with a word or phrase from the box.

no matter how whatever whatsoever whenever whichever whoever

- It doesn't matter which* variety of chilli you choose to grow, it'll need plenty of water.
- There are no artificial ingredients *at all* in our organic lemonade.
- I love fresh asparagus, *regardless of how* it's cooked.
- Who on earth* came up with the idea of garlic ice cream?
- The staff canteen offers around half a dozen different lunch options; salad, pizza, soup or *things like that*.
- Every time* the weather's good, we have a barbecue.

b 11.2))) Listen and check.

c 11.2))) Listen again and repeat.

- 3 Complete the article using a word or phrase with *-ever* or *no matter what/which/where*. There may be more than one possible answer.

New tastes

¹ *No matter where* you live in the world and ² _____

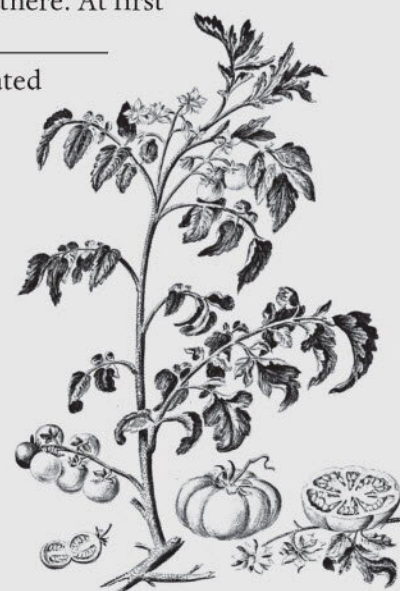
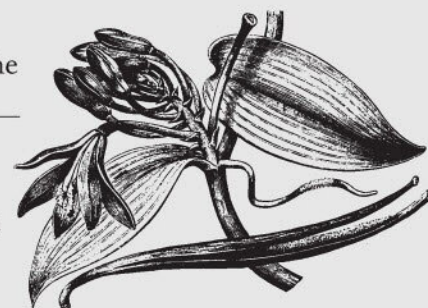
kind of food you like to eat, the chances are that some of the key ingredients you eat every day came originally from the Americas.

Everything from potatoes to chocolate and avocados to strawberries were indigenous to the American continent long before they spread to the rest of the world. But there are two things that I really couldn't do without ...

³ _____ I think of Italian food, I think of tomatoes. Whether it's on a pizza or in a rich pasta sauce, they're a central ingredient. ⁴ _____ heard of an Italian menu without any tomatoes? But tomatoes didn't actually arrive in Italy until the 16th century, introduced by European explorers returning from the New World. Their popularity has now spread globally, so ⁵ _____ you go, you'll probably find them used in some form, whether it's in an Indian curry or a Spanish gazpacho.

And when you think of ice cream, what's the first flavour you think of? ⁶ _____ one's your favourite, most people would agree that no ice cream selection is complete without vanilla. Dishes made from frozen milk have been made in China and the Middle East for hundreds of years, but these early ice creams were generally flavoured with ⁷ _____ fruits were found locally. Again, it wasn't until explorers started to bring vanilla pods back from the plant's native Mexico that this distinctive flavouring started to spread. In the early 19th century, the French took vanilla plants to the islands of Réunion and Mauritius in the hope of producing it there. At first they had no success ⁸ _____ because the plants can only be pollinated by a particular species of bee native to Mexico. It wasn't until Edmond Albius discovered a way to pollinate the plants by hand that production was possible outside of Mexico.

All of which makes you wonder, with no tomatoes or potatoes, no vanilla or chocolate, ⁹ _____ did those pre-16th century cooks manage to cook anything tasty at all?



Vocabulary food preparation

4a Match a phrase from each column to make recipe instructions.

1 Season	the eggs and cream together	the apples.
2 Chop	the bread	with salt.
3 Slice	the fish for	1 cm cubes.
4 Melt	the sauce generously	gently.
5 Peel	the zest off the rind of	10 minutes.
6 Grill	the potatoes into	one lemon.
7 Beat	the skin off	a low heat.
8 Grate	the butter over	thickly.



b Match the photos of the kitchen utensils 1–5 to the verbs in exercise 4a. There are some verbs you do not need.



1 beat

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

5a Match beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h and complete each recipe instruction with the correct form of a suitable word from exercise 4a.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 You'll need two <u>f</u> | a and _____ to taste. |
| 2 Sprinkle over a generous amount _____ | b lightly-_____ egg yolks and stir to combine with the flour. |
| 3 Then add the two _____ | c finely-_____ mint and parsley. |
| 4 This sauce is perfect _____ | d of freshly _____ parmesan cheese. |
| 5 Wash and _____ the potatoes, _____ | e and then cut them into cubes. |
| 6 Add the remaining ingredients _____ | f green peppers <u>sliced</u> lengthways into thin strips. |
| 7 Garnish the dish with _____ | g over the strawberries and serve with cream. |
| 8 Pour the _____ chocolate _____ | h served with _____ chicken or fish. |

b 11.3 Listen, check and repeat.

I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

use *whoever, whatever, wherever, no matter*.

☐
☐
☐

talk about food preparation.

☐
☐
☐

11.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary fixed and semi-fixed phrases

1 Complete the fixed phrases in comments 1–8.

- 1 I'm actually not a big fan of music festivals, to tell you _____.
- 2 This year, I really haven't got _____ who's going to win, it's so close.
- 3 He's spent his whole career up _____ working in the same company.
- 4 Thomas Edison was experimenting with sound films _____ back as 1895.
- 5 He looked on helplessly as the hotel burned down _____ his very eyes.
- 6 Reaching the village high up in the mountains is _____ means an easy task.
- 7 She's not exactly a good team player, if _____ I mean.
- 8 I ought to add, by _____, that I'll be out of the office on Tuesday and Wednesday.

2 Match each sentence beginning 1–4 to two possible endings a–h.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|----------|
| 1 This stands in ... | <u>c</u> | <u>h</u> |
| 2 The region has had a long ... | _____ | _____ |
| 3 Slowly but surely, over the ... | _____ | _____ |
| 4 Indeed, as ... | _____ | _____ |

- a past few years, the region's economy has recovered and things have noticeably picked up.
- b tradition of folk dance and music which is still going strong today.
- c sharp contrast to the situation found in more rural areas.
- d history of cloth production, dating back several centuries.
- e recently as last week, the chairman was still denying any financial problems.
- f millennia, the rocks have eroded, changing the shape of the coastline.
- g long ago as Ancient Greek times, people have been collecting fossil remains.
- h marked contrast to his previous films, which were much more mainstream in their appeal.

Vocabulary extension

3a Match the phrases in italics 1–8 to the definitions a–h.

- 1 It's more efficient to separate the waste *at source* before it reaches the recycling centre. _____
- 2 Having two directors working on one film is usually *a recipe for disaster*. _____
- 3 Wilson took control of the match right *from the word go*. _____
- 4 What was it that attracted you to the job *in the first place*? _____
- 5 We've had to *go back to square one* and reassess the situation all over again. _____
- 6 It was the most severe storm anyone had experienced *within recent memory*. _____
- 7 We prepare all the food *from scratch* using fresh ingredients. _____
- 8 I may not look it now, but I used to be quite a good swimmer *back in the day*. _____

- a in the past
- b originally, at the start of something
- c during the period of time that people can remember
- d at the place or time where something originates
- e return to where you started without having made any progress
- f an approach that's likely to have a negative result
- g from the very start of something
- h from the beginning without using anything already prepared

b Complete the sentences by using a variation of a phrase from exercise 3a and the words in italics.

- 1 It's hard to believe now that such methods could have been used *within living memory*.
- 2 Rushing into this type of venture without a proper business plan is a _____ *failure*.
- 3 The problem may be a result of the device being installed incorrectly _____ *instance*.
- 4 We *started* _____ and created a whole new web identity for the company.
- 5 The clothes and hairstyles some people had _____ *the 80s* look ever so dated nowadays.

11.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking emphasis

- 1 11.4 » Listen to someone describing their experience of Chinese New Year. Circle the stressed word in each sentence.
- The day before, it felt like the whole country was on the move, rushing home to be with their families.
 - At midnight, bells started ringing out all across the city.
 - The fireworks were spectacular to watch and stunningly loud.
 - Several cities have tried to ban firecrackers on safety grounds.
 - The streets were packed with local families and tourists all mingling together.
 - I took my whole family and I think everyone had an amazing time.

- 2 Rewrite sentences 1–4 to make them more emphatic using a word or phrase from the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

Never in a million years No way
Not for a minute Only when
The thing What

- You can't avoid getting covered in the coloured powder that gets thrown everywhere.

- We only appreciated the scale of the crowds when we reached the top of the hill and looked back.

- The music and dancing didn't stop the whole time.

- I wouldn't have expected to find myself jumping into a freezing Norwegian lake for fun.

Writing a blog entry

- 3 For each blog extract 1–6, decide whether the style of language is appropriate (✓) or not quite right (?).

1 Forget Rio, ignore Venice, this year I went to the city of Basel in Switzerland to experience a different kind of *mardi gras* celebration. ____

2 The traditional *Basler Fasnacht* is reputedly the largest carnival in Switzerland and takes place every year in February or March, one week later than carnivals elsewhere in the world. There are differing opinions as to the exact reasons for the timing. The word *fasnacht* literally means 'eve of the fast' and it traditionally marks the start of the period of Lent, although in the modern era, the carnival is firmly a cultural rather than a religious event. ____

3 When I arrived, the day before the start of the 72-hour festival, you could feel that there was a real sense of anticipation amongst my local hosts. As we sat chatting over dinner, I began to share in the excitement ... that is, until I discovered that I'd have to get up at 3.30 a.m. the next morning ready for the *Morgestraich*, the start of proceedings, at 4 a.m. sharp! ____

4 Slightly bleary-eyed, the next morning I made my way to the city centre, where the streets were already packed with people. Then at 4 a.m. on the dot, all the streetlights went out and the haunting high notes of piccolos cut through the chilly air, followed by the thud of hundreds of drums. ____

5 Local bands, known as *Cliques*, consist of *Pfiefer* (pipers) and *Tambouren* (drummers), and process through the streets of the city in costume. During the *Morgestraich*, these bands march and play their instruments, bearing lanterns which constitute the only light at this time. ____

6 It all goes on for three days and nights. People eat and drink and watch the processions. Traditional foods are flour soup and onion quiche. ____



'A piccolo player at Basel Fasnacht'

I can ...

	Very well	Quite well	More practice
understand fixed and semi-fixed phrases.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
use emphasis.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write a blog entry.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

12.1 Types of memory

Grammar causatives *have* and *get*

- 1 Choose the best form of the verb phrases in *italics* to complete the article.

Solving the memory puzzle

The memory of witnesses plays a crucial part in the criminal justice system, but are our memories as reliable as we think?

Faulty memory has been responsible for numerous cases where innocent people have been convicted of crimes they didn't commit. In some cases, people were convicted based on the testimony of several eyewitnesses, but when years later, because of improvements in technology, they were able to ¹ *have DNA tests carried out / have carried out DNA tests*, the tests proved beyond doubt that they were innocent. So were all those witnesses wrong?

During the process of investigating a crime, police usually ² *have eyewitnesses picked out / get eyewitnesses to pick out* a suspect from a line-up. They then ask them to make a statement confirming the identification and they also ³ *get them to add / have them to add* any more details they can remember. It can then take several months or even years before a case comes to court, at which point lawyers on both sides will ⁴ *get witnesses recalling / have witnesses recall* the events as part of the trial.

We tend to assume that our memory is rather like a video recording which we can just replay when we want to remember past events. Thus, we feel that the quality of our memories will depend primarily on the quality of those original recordings: how much did we see, how clear was our view, etc. In fact, scientists believe that it's actually more like a puzzle. Fragments of memory ⁵ *get stored / have stored* and then each time someone ⁶ *gets us to recount / gets us recount* a past event, we have to reconstruct those fragments afresh.

So when a lawyer ⁷ *has to describe a witness / has a witness describe* what they saw or experienced in court, all kinds of factors can have a significant influence on the way those fragments ⁸ *get reconstructed / get to reconstruct*. When the witness ⁹ *has information coming in / gets information to come in* from different sources, such as a previous testimony or information from the questioner, it's easy for their fragments of memory to unknowingly ¹⁰ *get combined / get to combine* with that other information, leading to inaccuracies.

- 2 Rewrite sentences 1–8 using a phrase with *have* or *get*. More than one answer may be possible.

- 1 If someone stole my phone, I wouldn't be able to remember anyone's numbers.
- 2 When I was younger, my mum made me put the door key round my neck on a piece of string so I didn't lose it.
- 3 I honestly can't remember the last time the garage serviced my car.
- 4 Ashwin started going out onto the beach to collect litter and he soon encouraged members of the local community to help him.
- 5 A bee stung me when I was a kid and I've been frightened of them ever since.
- 6 In many schools, kids still have to memorize lists of facts which they just forget as soon as their exams are over.
- 7 We should teach more everyday skills like what to do when something breaks and needs fixing.
- 8 Since Kuniko broke her ankle, she's been ordering her groceries online and the store has been delivering them.



Vocabulary special meanings of *off*, *down* and *over*

- 3 Match the meaning of the words in *italics* in sentences 1–8 to the best paraphrase from the box.

about cancelled depends on discount during
happening soon not working ~~written~~

- When I'm in lectures, I always try to get the key points *down* in my notebook. written
- Over* the past months, I think my note-taking skills have improved. _____
- There's been some discussion *over* the effectiveness of taking notes electronically. _____
- Really, whether you choose paper or digital note-taking *is down to* personal preference. _____
- Apparently, tomorrow's 9.30 a.m. lecture is *off* because the lecturer's unwell. _____
- The university wi-fi connection isn't very reliable; it's often *down* just when you need it. _____
- Students get 10% *off* in a lot of local bookstores and cafés. _____
- The final exams are *not far off* now, so I've started reading back through my lecture notes. _____

- 4 Complete the texts using *off*, *down* or *over*.

It's been reported in the media ¹_____ the last few days that the increasing amount of time employees are having ²_____ work due to illness is increasingly ³_____ to stress and other mental health issues.

There's been a ⁴break_____ in communication ⁵_____ a number of key elements which may mean that the entire plan may be ⁶_____ the agenda.

We've had a look at our revenues ⁷_____ the last three months and unfortunately we're ⁸_____ compared to this time last year. We think this might be ⁹_____ to unexpected volatility in some of our developing markets, resulting in our forecasts being slightly ¹⁰_____ target. Discussions ¹¹_____ our investment plans are therefore currently taking place, but it is likely that all departmental managers will see a certain amount taken ¹²_____ their budgets for the coming year.

- 5 Rewrite sentences 1–10 replacing the words in *italics* using a phrase with *off*, *down* or *over*. There may be more than one possible answer.

- After the storm, several mobile phone networks were *not working*.
...networks were down.
- The match in São Paulo *has been postponed* because the pitch is flooded.
- Fans can either get a refund or money *discounted from* tickets for the next match.
- Several players were unwell after eating some shellfish that *wasn't fresh*.
- One witness managed to *make a note of* the car's registration number.
- How accurately you're able to recall an event can *be influenced by* a number of factors.
- The trial may *not happen for some time* and witnesses' memories can fade.
- A witness takes in a lot of new information, both true and false, *during* the course of a trial.
- There's disagreement amongst researchers *concerning* exactly how reliable witness testimony is.
- Errors in witness testimony may also be *caused because* people's ability to remember is impaired by the stress of an event.



I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

use causatives *have* and *get*.

☐ ☐ ☐

understand special meanings of *off*, *down* and *over*.

☐ ☐ ☐

12.2 Improving your memory

Grammar reporting verbs

- 1 Match beginnings 1–8 to endings a–h.
- 1 Why does the current education system insist ____
 - 2 The review complimented ____
 - 3 His opponents in the scientific community have asserted ____
 - 4 The benefits of memory training techniques are generally acknowledged ____
 - 5 The authors of the report claim ____
 - 6 The college authorities are urging ____
 - 7 This approach to learning emphasizes ____
 - 8 Do any other studies suggest ____
- a that the research was flawed.
 - b to have used widely-recognized sampling methods.
 - c the teaching staff on their innovative methods.
 - d the role of visual memory in grasping abstract ideas.
 - e those studying for exams not to consume excessive amounts of caffeine.
 - f on the need to memorize facts?
 - g that hormones can play a role in storing memories?
 - h to be only temporary in nature.
- 2 Complete the blog post using the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. Add any other necessary words. There may be more than one possible answer.



Five study tips

to help improve your memory

● Go for a walk

Exercise is widely ¹ acknowledged to boost (acknowledge / boost) brainpower and memory in particular. Research ² _____ (suggest) about 20 minutes of exercise before an exam can help you perform better.

● Teach someone else

Experts ³ _____ (advise / students / try) teaching the ideas they need to remember to someone else. By ⁴ _____ (reflect) what you've learnt and then trying to reformulate it for someone else, you process the information more deeply. As a result, you're more likely to remember it.

● Talk to yourself

Some studies ⁵ _____ (claim) you're 50% more likely to remember something if you read it aloud than if you read it silently. By reading out loud, you're getting a different kind of input to your brain, i.e. audio as well as visual, which is thought to increase your chances of remembering information.

● Take a break

Educationalists often ⁶ _____ (emphasize / importance) rest when you're studying. If you're tired and stressed, your brain simply won't function as effectively. Many experts ⁷ _____ (advise / students / not work) for more than 40–45 minutes without a break. It is commonly ⁸ _____ (assert) any new information you take in after you've been studying for more than 90 minutes won't be retained.

● Work together

We tend to think of studying for exams as a solitary experience, but nowadays more institutions are ⁹ _____ (urge / students / work) in groups. As noted above, not only will you benefit from explaining your ideas to someone else, but alternative angles on an idea from your peers can sometimes provide those 'lightbulb moments' that help something click into place.

3 Write sentences using the prompts to report ideas from the blog post in exercise 2.

- The blog / endorse / exercise / means / improve memory.
The blog endorses exercise as a means to improve memory.
- The writer / suggest / teach / ideas / others / help / remember.

- The blog / advise / students / read / texts / aloud.

- The blog / emphasize / need / students / take / regular breaks.

- The writer / claim / new information / not retain / if / study / 90 minutes / without / break.

- The post / acknowledge / study groups / be / useful / way / improve / understanding.

5a 12.1))) Listen to the short phrases and circle the main stress on each word 1–6.

- implications
- substantial
- reproduce
- misinterpret
- fundamentally
- disproportionate

b 12.1))) Listen again and repeat.

6 Complete the extracts using the correct form of the words in italics from exercise 4.

When tested, a significantly higher ¹ _____ of the participants who played a musical instrument ² _____ and recalled the sequences of letters correctly than the control group. The results for the two groups on the other tests, however, were ³ _____ similar.



Further research is needed to determine if these results can be ⁴ _____ in a larger sample of patients to fully assess the ⁵ _____ for clinical practice. Such a large-scale study, however, would require ⁶ _____ investment and resources.

The centre collects and ⁷ _____ climate data from around the world. It reports on ⁸ _____ changes in climate patterns that may be ⁹ _____ extreme weather events.

Jones argues that the basic ¹⁰ _____ behind the whole concept is ¹¹ _____ undermined because it doesn't take into account natural variation between individuals.

Vocabulary describing research and results

4 Match the meaning of the words in italics in sentences 1–11 to the more informal or neutral synonyms from the box.

basic big clear idea link...to number often remember repeat
roughly suggestion understanding

- Psychologists *associate* the hippocampus area in the centre of the brain with learning and memory. *link ... to*
- A significantly higher *proportion* of participants in the 75–85 age group made memory-related errors in the test. _____
- It is now commonly understood that we *retain* information entering the memory subconsciously far more effectively than conscious information. _____
- The findings raise *fundamental* questions about the way we interview witnesses. _____
- Miller's Law suggests that people can accurately *reproduce* a string of up to seven words they have heard. _____
- The effects of exercise on memory are particularly *noticeable* in older people. _____
- These patients suffer *substantial* difficulties in concentrating and with their short-term memories. _____
- The two reviews came to *broadly* similar conclusions. _____
- Chapter nine discusses the main *principle* put forward to explain how and why procedural memory develops. _____
- The main *implication* of our research findings is that the model previously used is fundamentally flawed. _____
- Each subject questioned had a slightly different *interpretation* of the events. _____

I can ...

Very well Quite well More practice

use reporting verbs.



describe research and results.



12.3 Vocabulary development

Vocabulary noticing, selecting and recording collocations

- 1 Complete the section of a student's vocabulary notebook with collocations from the box. Not all the words are needed.

attention cite conduct have
long-term main make memory
mind reading research significant
slight strategy trigger vivid

Memory & thinking:

1 short-term } memory

a photographic } memory

3 bring back } a memory

a short 4 span

dismiss sth. from your 5

Academic study & research:

6 carry out } a study

8 quote } a source

an effective 9

10 an effect

11 speed

the 12 idea (in a text)

- 2 Complete sentences 1–5 using the correct form of the words and phrases from exercise 1.

- The study found that smells can often trigger _____ visual memories.
- Make notes on the writer's _____ ideas and any supporting evidence given for each.
- The study skills course offers a number of _____ strategies for improving your reading _____.
- There is evidence that the attention span of the average teenager is significantly _____ than it was a generation ago.
- In the literature review section of your dissertation, you should describe previous research _____ on the topic and _____ any relevant sources.

Vocabulary extension

- ➔ **STUDY TIP** Remember to note down information about register associated with specific collocations. Is the collocation used in a formal, academic, scientific or other context?

- 3a Underline the words in the extracts that collocate with the words in *italics*. The collocated words may be in a different part of the sentence.

- The study found that approximately 8% of these patients suffered *an impairment* of kidney function after undergoing *surgery*.
- The 2008 regulations are only a small part of the statutory *provisions* concerned with *health* and safety at work.
- He concluded that he had obtained sufficient empirical *evidence* to support the *hypothesis* of the existence of a long-wave economic cycle.

- b Complete the table using words from exercise 3a. Decide on the register of each phrase using the labels from the box.

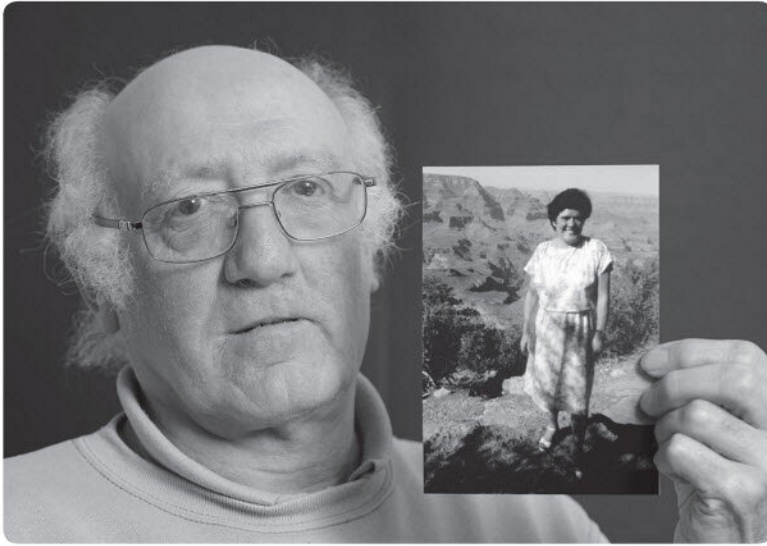
academic general legal medical

1	<u>suffer</u>	an impairment	<u>medical</u>
2	have	surgery	general / medical
3			
4	a	provision	
5	health		general /
6	find	evidence	general
7			
8	new / good	evidence	
9			academic
10		a hypothesis	

12.4 Speaking and writing

Speaking talking about a magazine story

1a Choose the correct words in italics to complete the extracts.



- 1 *Did you hear / Do you know* about that pensioner who had a voicemail message recorded by his late wife deleted by his phone company?
- 2 Well, apparently *he'd kept / he's kept* the message for something like fourteen years.
- 3 While the engineer's been working on the phone, *he's only gone and deleted / he only went and deleted* the message.
- 4 Oh no! *He must've been / He'll be* gutted!
- 5 Yes, he was *very sad / absolutely devastated*.
- 6 *What made it worse was that / It was more disappointing because* the phone company had promised that the message would be OK.
- 7 So it was saved on their servers, *wasn't it / was it?*
- 8 I guess, *it must've been / it had been*.

b Do you think the story had a happy or a sad ending?

c 12.2))) Listen to the whole conversation and check your answers.

Writing a magazine story

2a Choose the best opening line 1–3 for an online version of the news story reported in exercise 1.

- 1 A pensioner lost a voicemail recording of his late wife's voice and then found it again.
- 2 A special voicemail recording that was thought to have been deleted, leaving a pensioner devastated, was miraculously recovered by engineers.
- 3 A pensioner has been reunited with a voicemail message recorded by his late wife after he thought it had been lost.

b Put extracts a–h in the best order to complete the rest of the news story.

- a He used to listen to it whenever he was feeling lonely and he said it gave him comfort just to hear her voice. _____
- b A back-up copy has now been made of the message so Stan will never lose it again. _____
- c Mr Beaton was utterly devastated when he heard that the message had been lost. _____
- d 'I was just so elated it had been found. I couldn't believe it, to be honest. I was so grateful,' said Mr Beaton after engineers played the message down the phone to him. _____
- e The phone company had promised that the precious message would be safe, but somehow, during the upgrade, the unthinkable happened and the message got deleted. _____
- f Recently, he had to have his phone line upgraded. _____
- g Sixty-eight-year-old widower, Stan Beaton, had kept a voicemail message recorded by his wife Ruby for fourteen years. _____
- h Technicians spent days trawling through hundreds of messages saved on the company's servers until they finally found Ruby's voice. _____

I can ...

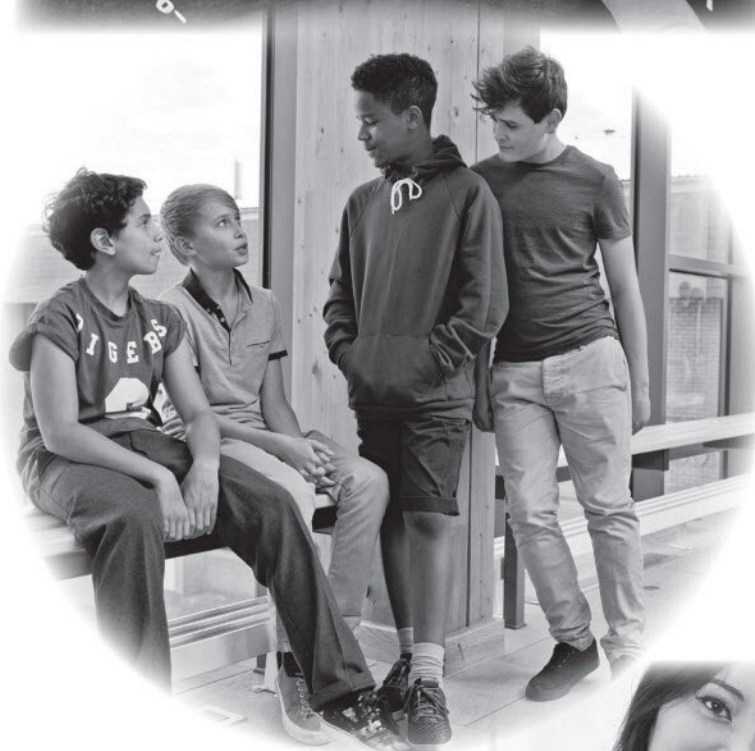
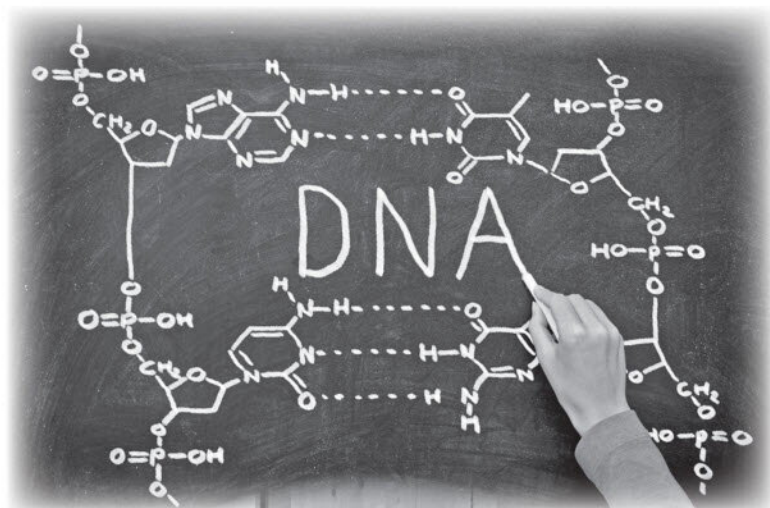
	Very well	Quite well	More practice
notice, select and record collocations.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
talk about a magazine story.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
write a magazine story.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

12.5 Listening for pleasure

What makes you you?

- 1 How much are the topics in the box influenced by genetics and how much by the environment you grow up in?

addictions disease educational success
personality preferences in life



- 2 12.3 » Listen to a college lecture called *Nature versus nurture* to find out about the current understanding within science.
- 3a Complete the summary with one word or number from the lecture in each gap.

The lecture covers some of the latest research and the main arguments involved in the *Nature versus nurture* debate; or how much your personality is determined by genetics, and how much by your ¹_____.

Some scientists believe that genes don't determine personality directly, but rather provide ²_____. For instance, a malfunction in the speech gene FOXP2 can lead to ³_____. On the other hand, scientists who believe that ⁴_____ shapes personality disagree on who influences children more: parents or peers and friends. Children acquire their parent's habits by ⁵_____, while the need to be part of a group comes from a primitive ⁶_____.

The latest research suggests that both factors have influence on an individual to approximately the same extent: ⁷_____ % by nature, ⁸_____ % by nurture.

- b 12.3 » Listen again and check.

- 4 Do you think nature or nurture has been more important in forming who you are? Have you been more influenced by family, peers or friends?

Review: Units 11 and 12

Grammar

- Report the statements using the verb given. There may be more than one possible answer.
 - It is really important to keep anti-virus software updated.
Online security advice emphasizes *the importance of keeping anti-virus software updated*.
 - New staff should have their work station set-up properly assessed.
Ergonomics experts advise _____
 - We have discovered a number of new species of butterfly in the rainforest.
Zoologists claim _____
 - New clients need to have a one-to-one consultation to assess their needs.
As customer care manager, she insists _____
 - Further research is needed to corroborate these findings.
The researchers acknowledge _____
 - Based on this study, there is a clear link between social class and career success.
The research suggests _____
- Put the words in the correct order.
 - service / They / got / to / the engineer / the entire heating system

 - no / I always / times / matter / spot / I visit / something new / how many

 - 2% / only present / The / is / the population / gene / in / of / about

 - the entire / cleaned / apartment / had / We / professionally

 - afoot / into / the old / There / plans / an arts centre / to convert / are / factory

 - whatsoever / I / the company's / that / doubt / around / fortunes / have / no / she / will turn

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct words or phrases in italics to complete the article.

Digital literacy – the new key life skill?

In the so-called 'information age', the internet is ¹ *awash / afloat* with 'facts' about every possible topic. Much of the information out there, though, is by no ² *way / means* reliable or accurate. To ³ *tell you / speak* the truth, a fair, ⁴ *proportion / number* of it is questionable at best. A lot of the inaccuracies are ⁵ *up / down* to the fact that anyone can post information online without an editor to check the facts first. One of the ⁶ *implications / principles* of this rather messy state of affairs is that an individual's ⁷ *proportion / interpretation* of what they take in becomes the key in deciding what can be trusted. That's where digital literacy skills come in. Those who are internet-savvy have developed ⁸ *effective / sharp* strategies for evaluating the reliability of the information they come across. Above all, they are acutely ⁹ *alert / aware* of the source of any information; who posted it and whether it's been checked against other sources.

Speaking

- Match beginnings 1–6 to endings a–f.
 - Wow, really? This was _____
 - So how was _____
 - Did you hear about the guy _____
 - Apparently, it was only when _____
 - No way would I expect _____
 - It was, and the amazing thing was _____
 - someone to be able to survive for that long.
 - out in the open ocean sea, I guess?
 - he survived by catching fish and drinking rainwater.
 - who survived for sixty-six days at sea after his boat capsized?
 - he was spotted by a passing ship that help arrived.
 - he finally rescued then?

- Put the sentences in a logical order.

3 _____

Audioscripts

Unit 1 Change

Page 4, Exercise 2b

1.1)))

- 1 If I walk to work, it takes almost twice as long as going by tram.
- 2 Cycling around is a great deal healthier than driving everywhere.
- 3 Just walking or cycling about is every bit as good for you as going to the gym.
- 4 I know I'm nowhere near as fit as I used to be.
- 5 Children are spending considerably less time playing outside than previous generations.
- 6 Far fewer children walk to school than twenty years ago.

Page 7, Exercises 5b & d

1.2)))

resistance, resist, resistant
implementation, implement
consultation, consult
adaptability/adaptation, adapt, adaptable/
adapted
imposition, impose, imposing
facilitation/facilitator, facilitate

Page 9, Exercise 3b

1.3)))

- 1 A number of libraries are facing closure in our city.
- 2 Dozens of staff are in danger of losing their jobs this month.
- 3 Staff costs account for upwards of 80% of the libraries' budget.
- 4 The council needs to make approximately £1million of cuts in public spending.
- 5 Nationally over the past five years, library visits have fallen by just over 15%.
- 6 The number of books being lent is down by nearly 20%.
- 7 Hundreds of libraries are threatened with closure across the country.
- 8 An incredible number of people have signed petitions to try and save their local libraries.

Unit 2 Feats

Page 12, Exercise 3b

2.1)))

The sporting world has changed significantly over the past century. When we look back at old black-and-white footage of athletics events from the past, it all looks incredibly slow. And our perceptions aren't wrong. The statistics show that every few years, 0.1 of a second has been taken off the time it takes to

run the 100-metre sprint. So in 2008, Usain Bolt ran 100 metres in 9.69 seconds and in 2009, he did it in 9.58 seconds. Many believe that in the next few years, the 9.5-second barrier will be broken.

You could argue that it's the athlete's ability and dedication that has brought about these improvements; that modern athletes just work harder than their counterparts of fifty years ago. To an extent that's true. Since 1981, fully professional athletes have been allowed to compete in the Olympic Games, for example. So now they are able to dedicate every waking and sleeping moment of their lives to pushing their bodies to the limits.

But as a scientist, I have to argue that it's actually the scientific advances in the past century that have played a more important role. These advances have come from a number of different fields. Biomechanical engineering is the science of how we move our bodies and how we could move our bodies more efficiently in order to be faster. The new knowledge that's come from research in this area enables athletes to train smarter and to develop new techniques. And advances in materials science have transformed sports clothing and equipment through the development of radically new materials. We no longer see sprinters running round a track in heavy leather shoes and bulky cotton sports gear. But let's not forget ...

Page 15, Exercise 1

2.2)))

- 1 We all take it for granted that we can read the various signs around the hospital to help us get to where we need to go. But it's important to remember that some patients and visitors might struggle to read them. They may have sight problems, literacy issues or English might not be their first language. This means that for some, a hospital is an unfamiliar place where you can easily get lost.
- 2 In many cases though, they may be embarrassed about asking for directions directly. Your role as volunteers is to look out for anyone who might be lost and to offer help in a friendly way, either pointing them in the right direction or if necessary, taking them where they need to go.
- 3 You'll all have seen the no mobile phones signs on the hospital wards. Mobile phone signals can, in some cases, interfere with potentially life-saving medical equipment, so their use in these areas is strictly prohibited. This doesn't, however, extend to

the reception area, cafés, shops and outside areas where mobile phone use is allowed.

- 4 Understandably, when people are in hospital, especially in an unexpected or emergency situation, their first instinct is to let family and friends know what's going on. So if you notice someone using a mobile phone on a ward, then you need to deal with the situation sensitively. Explain to them, politely but firmly, why phones can't be used in that area and direct them to those parts of the hospital where it's permitted to make calls.
- 5 As a member of hospital staff, you may be asked all kinds of questions about practical, administrative and sometimes even medical issues. Of course, you want to be as helpful as you can, but it's absolutely vital that you don't give out any incorrect or potentially misleading information. If you're not completely sure about the answer to a question, either find another member of staff to ask or refer the person to where they can find out for themselves, such as the information desk in reception.

Page 15, Exercise 2b

2.3)))

- A I think my greatest challenge and achievement in recent years has been setting up my own business at the same time as juggling the commitments that go with a young family. Being your own boss sounds like a brilliant idea, but the reality is that it can be utterly exhausting, especially when you're trying to combine it with ferrying the kids to after-school activities.
- B I've been incredibly lucky throughout my scientific career to work with some really great colleagues on some groundbreaking projects. My greatest achievement though, I suppose, would have to be the educational projects I've set up to make science more interesting for young people. If I've managed to pass on just a bit of my enthusiasm for my subject to the next generation of scientists, then I'll be very happy.
- C When I was growing up, I was kind of shy and self-conscious; I didn't like speaking in front of people. But then, while I was at university, I got involved in student politics. I'd be arguing all the time with my friends about some issue or another. My proudest moment came when I addressed a rally of thousands of people protesting against government cuts. I was so totally caught up in the moment that, well, I just forgot to be nervous!

Page 15, Exercise 2c

2.4)))

- 1 I think my greatest challenge and achievement in recent years has been setting up my own business.
- 2 Being your own boss sounds like a brilliant idea, but the reality is that it can be utterly exhausting.
- 3 I've been incredibly lucky throughout my scientific career to work with some really great colleagues on some groundbreaking projects.
- 4 My greatest achievement though, I suppose, would have to be the educational projects I've set up to make science more interesting for young people.
- 5 If I've managed to pass on just a bit of my enthusiasm for my subject ...
- 6 When I was growing up, I was kind of shy and self-conscious.
- 7 I'd be arguing all the time with my friends about some issue or another.
- 8 I was so totally caught up in the moment ...

Unit 3 Teams

Page 19, Exercise 4b

3.1)))

- 1
A Have you asked Tim about the schedule for Friday?
B Yes, I have. It's all sorted.
- 2
A I haven't heard anything from the organizers yet about the workshop.
B No, neither have I.
- 3
A You weren't listening, were you?
B Yes, I was – I heard everything he said.
- 4
A Are you free for a meeting at ten o'clock on Wednesday?
B Yes, I think I am. I'll check my diary, though.
- 5
A I'm not sure the sales team are going to like my ideas.
B They will do – don't worry.
- 6
A Are the brochures ready? We really do need to send them out by the end of the week.
B Yes, I know. Don't worry, they'll be back from the printers tomorrow.
- 7
A I'm going to be working again this weekend.
B Yes, so am I. It's always a busy time of year.
- 8
A I'm not sure whether to go on the trip to the funfair at the weekend. It's not really my thing.
B Do come along – it'll be fun!

Page 19, Exercise 4c

3.2)))

- 1 Yes, I have. It's all sorted.
- 2 No, neither have I.
- 3 Yes, I was – I heard everything he said.
- 4 Yes, I think I am. I'll check my diary, though.
- 5 They will do – don't worry.
- 6 We really do need to send them out by the end of the week.
- 7 Yes, so am I. It's always a busy time of year.
- 8 Do come along – it'll be fun!

Page 20, Exercise 1b

3.3)))

1
In India, cricket is the national sport. When you're a kid, you play cricket in the street and at school, and everyone wants to be on the cricket team. When India are playing a big international match, the streets are empty because everyone's gathered round the TV watching the game.

2

The New Zealand rugby team, the All Blacks, are undoubtedly the best team in the world. You can't beat the excitement of going to a live match. The fans arrive at the stadium dressed in the team's all black shirts with the white fern emblem. Then, before the match starts, the team lines up facing the opposition in the middle of the pitch for the *haka*; a traditional Maori war dance that's designed to intimidate their opponents.

Page 23, Exercise 1a

3.4)))

- A OK, so the next thing is the issue of deliveries to customers. Up until now, different departments have been using different delivery options, and I think it's time that we had a company-wide policy and used a single supplier.
- B Sorry, what did you mean when you said departments are using different delivery options?
- A What I meant was some departments are sending things out using regular mail and others are using different courier companies. That worked fine in the old days when mail-order volumes were quite small, but now that our online sales are really beginning to grow, I think we need a bit of a rethink. We need to decide what's going to be most cost-effective and best meet the company's needs.
- C Sorry, I didn't catch that last part.
- A What I was saying is, as a company, we need to find the best way to organize all our deliveries. Something that works for us now, but will work in the future too as we expand. Are you with me?
- B So am I right in thinking that you'd like us all to use the same courier company? A lot of products we send out are

breakable and the courier we use hasn't damaged anything in ages.

- A Not necessarily. Obviously, it'd probably be cheaper to use a single supplier, but I think we need to assess the needs of each department first and then see if we can come up with a one-size-fits-all solution.
- C Sorry, I don't follow you.
- A I'll put it another way. If we can find one supplier who's right for everyone, then we'll go with that. But if not, then we may need to consider different solutions for different departments. And we may even decide not to make any changes at all. In other words, each department will still have the final say. I just think we could do with reviewing the situation.

Unit 4 Responsibility

Page 24, Exercise 2

4.1)))

When you get to check-in to meet an unaccompanied child, you must introduce yourself to the child and to their parents and explain your role. You needn't give your full name, as using just your first name will generally come across as more friendly. Chat to the parents a bit about the trip and get a sense for how the child's feeling about the journey. Reassure them all about the process if necessary. Parents are supposed to stay at check-in until the flight departs, but if they have to rush off, then make sure you get a contact number just in case of any long delays or cancellations. Before you leave check-in, you must make sure that the child has their passport and any other relevant documents, like visas. Even though your check-in colleagues should have already checked everything, sometimes we find that parents automatically keep the documents rather than giving them to the child. You must accompany the child through passport control and security and go with them to the gate. If they want to look in shops or whatever, that's fine if there's enough time, but you mustn't let them out of your sight. Once you get to the departure gate, you don't have to sit with the child. Some kids will want to chat or to play with you, but if they're happy on their own, then just make sure you stay within sight. When the flight boards, you must accompany them to their seat and make sure they're settled in. At this point, a member of the cabin crew will take over responsibility for the duration of the flight, but it's a good idea to reassure the child and ensure they're settled in before you say goodbye.

Page 27, Exercise 5b

4.2)))

- 1 Smallpox is believed to have arrived in the USA with early European colonizers in the 1600s.

- 2 Dogs are not allowed on the beach during the summer period.
- 3 The survey reveals that only one-third of elderly people who live alone are visited on a daily basis.
- 4 A lot of services focus on the disabled person and often the needs of the carer get forgotten.
- 5 The results were analysed by two independent observers who both found high levels of pollution.
- 6 The first Barnardo's home for boys was established in 1867.
- 7 Many of her childhood photos got damaged during the fire.
- 8 The company is understood to have changed its procedures since the incident.

Page 29, Exercise 3b

4.3)))

- A As you know, the development of the new supermarket has now been approved and our company will be carrying out the construction work over the next six months. Of course, we recognize that this is going to cause some disruption for those of you living nearby, but we're hoping to keep it to a minimum. So I'm here today to answer any questions. Yes ...
- B It says in the proposals that work will take place within 'normal working hours' – what exactly do you mean by that?
- A Well, regulations state that this kind of construction work can be carried out between 7.30 a.m. and 7 p.m., Monday to Saturday, so of course we'll make sure that we keep within those times.
- B But I'm not sure we can accept that. It's going to be incredibly disruptive. It means being woken up by it in the mornings six days a week.
- A I do understand your concerns, but I also think we need to look at the bigger picture here. If we work shorter hours, then the work will just take longer and, clearly, no one wants that.
- B Well, no, but we've got to live with this, and almost twelve hours a day of noise does seem excessive to me.
- C Perhaps if I could just come in here? I can see both sides of this, but do we have any room for compromise? Maybe if your team starts work at 7.30 a.m. but perhaps doesn't do anything too noisy until say 8 a.m. or 8.30 a.m.?
- A Well, I could put that to them and see what they think. We may not be able to guarantee it every day, but we could certainly try to delay using the noisier machinery until after 8 a.m. most days, I think.
- C Thanks, that might work a bit better for us. At least, then the noise wouldn't start until most people were on their way out.

Page 30, Exercises 2 & 3

4.4)))

Thank you very much. I'm here to talk to you about one of the most serious health risks society is facing today, which, by the way, you're all doing right now. Any guesses ... yes, sitting! We spend hours and hours sitting at the desk at work, followed by a few more hours of sitting on the couch at home, and I haven't even mentioned the daily commute.

The fact is that the human body is not designed to stay still for long periods. We evolved to move, and a number of bodily functions like circulation depend directly on it. There are several consequences of being in the one position for long periods. Some of them are more obvious, like strain on your spine or DVT, that's deep vein thrombosis, but some lesser-known effects might surprise you.

Did you know for example that, when sitting, your lungs send less oxygen to the brain? Or that sitting's linked to several types of cancer and heart disease? And it's also about how long we spend being sedentary every day. Studies have indicated that people who sit for six hours a day have higher mortality rates than those who sit for three, regardless of physical activity. You can be a triathlete in your free time, but if you're sitting too much, you're risking your health.

Dr James Levine, a specialist in the area, has summed up his findings in two sentences: 'Sitting's more dangerous than smoking, kills more people than HIV and is more treacherous than parachuting. We're sitting ourselves to death.'

I guess by now you're feeling the urge to get up and stretch, right? Feel free to do so. That's exactly what I'm going to talk to you about next, and give you some tips about how to start turning things around.

Let's start with those situations when you can't get up, much like in a plane, for instance. I'm guessing many of you have to go on business trips quite often, right? Well, the best thing to do when you're stuck in a seat is to move your feet in circles and massage your legs: keep that blood flowing. It's also very helpful to drink lots of water, and don't feel guilty about bothering the flight attendants for some more. They're the lucky ones – they get to walk around most of the time during the flight!

In your day-to-day office life, there are a number of very simple things you can do in relation to this problem even before you get there. Commuting can mean quite a long time sitting, so why not park further away from the building entrance? It's just the walk you need to stretch your legs after the car ride, and I guarantee you'll find a spot much more easily!

Now, what about in the office itself? We all know that the advice is to regularly stand up and walk around, but who has the time

to do this? So instead, we really should be deliberately creating situations in which we have to get out of our seats several times a day.

Take your desk, for instance. We tend to organize it so that everything is to hand, but what we should be doing is putting the phone or files we need to refer to all the time in a place where we have to stand up and get them.

Another thing – if you have a meeting that doesn't require going over a lot of paperwork, why not take a stroll and have it in the nearest park? Studies suggest that 'walking meetings' are actually much more productive. Remember what I said about limited blood circulation to your brain when you're sitting?

So, to wrap up with a catchphrase that's going around a lot just now: 'Sitting is the new smoking'. However, don't forget that there are a lot of little things you can incorporate into your daily routine today that will make a world of difference.

Thank you very much for listening. If you have any questions, I'd be very happy to answer them now.

Unit 5 Power

Page 33, Exercises 3b & c

5.1)))

- 1 For an increasing number of people, the mainstream media is not the first source they turn to for news.
- 2 Blogging is just one way individuals and groups can publish their ideas to a wider audience.
- 3 Social media sites like Twitter and YouTube also provide a platform which can be used to spread information and opinion.
- 4 News reporters can't always get to the place an incident has happened right away.
- 5 'Citizen journalists' can often publish news and pictures of events the moment they happen.
- 6 A member of the public can post video footage online of a major incident and the emergency services attending it within seconds.
- 7 Online media is easily accessible to a wide range of people, which means everyone can now have a voice.
- 8 Individuals seeking to influence political policy are starting to challenge the more traditional, organized and well-funded lobby groups.

Page 35, Exercise 4b

5.2)))

- 1 Only the handful of countries which lie above the Arctic Circle experience the midnight sun.
- 2 The absence of rain during the summer months led to drought conditions.
- 3 Every year, dozens of people gather on the

shores of the lake to celebrate Midsummer Eve.

- 4 During the cold wet winter months, there's a shortage of locally-produced food which leads to a reliance on imports.
- 5 We generally produce a surplus of food in the summer months, some of which can be stored for use in winter.
- 6 In the summer months, we spend a great deal of our time doing stuff outdoors.
- 7 They were working an excessive number of hours in very high temperatures without adequate breaks or drinking water.
- 8 Climate science is hampered by an acute scarcity of accurate data going back in time.

Page 37, Exercise 1b

5.3)))

- 1
A I really should cut down on the amount of coffee I drink.
B Yes, I know what you mean. If I drink too much, it gives me a headache.
A I just struggle to get my day started without my morning coffee.
B Oh yes, I couldn't agree more. It's always the first thing I do when I get up, too.
- 2
A Look at these apples. I don't understand why people buy this kind of stuff.
B I'm not sure I follow you. They look OK to me.
A I'm sure they're delicious, but that's not the point. They've been flown halfway round the world. Why can't people just buy local apples?
B I suppose you're right, but apples aren't in season here at the moment.
A So why not eat something else that is?
- 3
A I don't let the kids have computers in their bedrooms because looking at screens before they go to sleep isn't good for them.
B How do you mean?
A Well, apparently there's something about the light from screens that affects the hormones in your brain and stops you sleeping properly.
B Really? I'd no idea.
A Yes, there's been lots of research into it.

Unit 6 Play

Pages 38 & 39, Exercises 2a & b

6.1)))

In recent years, I've started using computer games as part of my science classes. Not that long ago, I would've thought of games as just a gimmick, something to keep the kids quiet instead of proper teaching. But there have been some real advances in educational software of late that have completely changed my opinion. I always spend quite a bit of time testing a game before I decide to use it. If a game didn't have a real educational aim, then it wouldn't be approved by the school.

It wouldn't be right to take up valuable class time with something that was fun, but didn't really serve a purpose.

Let me give you an example. We introduce kids to the idea of ecosystems as part of the environmental science programme. Lots of the theories about how plants and animals interact are quite complicated and a bit abstract. They'd be quite difficult to explain without concrete examples. In the old days, we'd have taken the students out on a field trip to the local park to look at a pond. They'd have had lots of fun collecting samples and getting wet and dirty and they'd have learnt something about that particular ecosystem. Now, that's great and we do still go on field trips, but it's a bit limiting. It wouldn't be possible, for example, to take them to visit the Amazon rainforest or the Nile river delta.

We've got a game we use, though, that allows them to explore different ecosystems around the world. They can find out about places that they wouldn't be able to visit, using video and sound to get a real feel for the plants and animals found there. Then they're given a scenario where they're asked what they think would happen if a particular element of that system was changed. They work together in groups, so they have to discuss all the options and decide which one would be best. They make their choice and the game simulates what would actually happen. And it's not always as straightforward as you'd expect. Sometimes there are knock-on effects the students wouldn't have predicted. So not only do they find out about all these amazing natural environments, but it encourages their critical thinking skills, too. They have to work out the different cause and effect connections at play in each scenario in order to decide why something has happened and what to do next.

And, of course, there's a gaming element to it too in that the groups who make the best decisions score more points. All the videos and stuff are great, but I don't think the kids would get quite so engaged if there wasn't a competitive element to it.

Page 39, Exercise 2c

6.2)))

- 1 Not that long ago, I would've thought of games as just a gimmick ...
- 2 If a game didn't have a real educational aim, then it wouldn't be approved by the school.
- 3 In the old days, we'd have taken the students out on a field trip ...
- 4 They'd have had lots of fun collecting samples ...
- 5 ... and they'd have learnt something about that particular ecosystem.
- 6 They can find out about places that they wouldn't be able to visit ...

- 7 ... they're asked what they think would happen if a particular element of that system was changed.
- 8 And it's not always as straightforward as you'd expect.
- 9 Sometimes there are knock-on effects the students wouldn't have predicted.

Page 40, Exercise 2b

6.3)))

- 1 Apparently, we visited Malaysia when I was a kid, but I have no memory of having been there at all.
- 2 Looking back at old family photos, most of my childhood appears to have been spent at the beach.
- 3 Last summer, my cousin Chandy was to have stayed with us for a couple of weeks, but her plans changed.
- 4 It was quite chilly in the evenings and I was relieved to have packed a warm jacket.
- 5 Now you mention it, I do vaguely remember having arranged to meet up next weekend.
- 6 Ideally, I would have preferred to have taken a later flight, but they were more expensive.
- 7 Oh I'm sorry, I meant to have brought that book for you, but I forgot.
- 8 Alex said to tell you he's really sorry for having missed your birthday.
- 9 I only had time for a quick coffee with Mei, but I was glad to have met up with her anyway.
- 10 Luigi was complaining again about not having been invited to the wedding.

Page 43, Exercise 1b

6.4)))

- A Did you see that new wildlife thing on TV last night?
- B Yeah, what did you think of it?
- A I thought it was great. Some of the filming was ever so impressive. I loved the bit with the tigers. I really don't know how they managed to get such close-up shots.
- B Yeah, there was plenty of really good photography, but I thought the commentary was just a bit annoying.
- A How d'you mean?
- B Well, they'd say 'this animal isn't found anywhere else in the world' or something like that, then just a few minutes later they'd recap and say exactly the same thing again. Like you were too stupid to understand the first time!
- A Mmm, I know what you mean. I guess it was rather repetitive at times. And to be honest, all that stuff about how difficult the filming conditions were got on my nerves a bit, too. I just wanted them to get on with showing the animals.
- B Exactly, and then there was that bit about ...

Unit 7 Emotion and reason

Page 47, Exercise 2a

7.1)))

- 1 Christina was devastated when she found out she'd been passed over for promotion.
- 2 I'm envious of anyone who has the time and money to have more than one holiday a year.
- 3 We do understand the frustrations of the people in the neighbourhood.
- 4 Boubacar was understandably apprehensive about the first day of his new apprenticeship.
- 5 There's an enormous sense of relief amongst everyone, that the department isn't going to close.
- 6 His constantly critical comments clearly irritate his colleagues.
- 7 The media have been astonished by the team's success this season.
- 8 My boss was far from sympathetic about me having to take yet another day off.
- 9 The real challenge has been how to overcome apathy towards the project.
- 10 Mimi didn't like her new haircut and was feeling rather self-conscious about it.
- 11 I quite liked the proposal, but the finance director couldn't have been more indifferent to the idea.
- 12 The patient was feeling a lot of discomfort in the lower back area and was on strong painkillers.

Page 47, Exercise 2c

7.2)))

devastated, devastating, devastation, devastate
envious, envy, envy
frustrated, frustrating, frustration, frustrate
apprehensive, apprehension
relieved, relief, relieve
irritated, irritating, irritation, irritate
astonished, astonishing, astonishment, astonish
sympathetic, sympathy, sympathize
apathetic, apathy
self-conscious, self-consciousness
indifferent, indifference
uncomfortable, discomfort, discomfort

Page 49, Exercises 3b & c

7.3)))

- 1 It completely took me by surprise when he said he was emigrating.
- 2 I'd make a point of telling them it wasn't acceptable behaviour.
- 3 I just can't think straight today, but no news is good news, I suppose.
- 4 It was starting to get on my nerves so I moved to a different seat.
- 5 I was mortified when I realized she'd heard what I said.

- 6 I heard there was a heated argument about it during questions at the end of the seminar.
- 7 Don't take it personally if you don't get a response.
- 8 Next time, I'll think twice before using him – he never meets his deadlines.
- 9 She grabbed the opportunity to take a job in the Tokyo office with both hands.
- 10 I didn't lose my temper about it, but it was close!

Page 49, Exercise 5

7.4)))

- 1 Sue, who sits at the next desk, is really getting on my nerves with her constant moaning. If she hates it so much, why doesn't she just leave?
- 2 I was absolutely mortified when they made me get up on stage to make a speech. I hate speaking in front of people.
- 3 I don't know why I did it. I was in a total panic and I just wasn't thinking straight.
- 4 I made a point of thanking all the staff personally for their huge efforts over the previous twelve months.
- 5 Josh's negative reaction rather took me by surprise. I thought he would've been more amenable to the suggestion.
- 6 I got into a bit of a heated argument with my brother over the phone, but we sorted it out in the end.
- 7 Of course, you can't please everyone all the time, so I try not to take it personally when there's negative feedback.
- 8 With hindsight, I think I rather rushed into undertaking such a big project. For one thing, I should have realized that our resourcing budgets were never going to stretch that far.

Page 51, Exercise 1b

7.5)))

- 1
- A I'm afraid I won't be able to get the sales report finished by Thursday like I'd hoped, but I can get it to you on Monday. Is there a problem with that?
- B Well, I need it for a meeting on Monday and I'd really like to look at it over the weekend.
- A What if I were to get it to you by the end of the afternoon on Friday?
- B OK, provided I definitely have it before the weekend.
- 2
- A I was wondering if we could make next week's seminar a bit earlier.
- B Sorry, but what time did you have in mind? I have to get a bus into college and I already leave quite early.
- A I was thinking we could start at 8 a.m. instead of 9 a.m., perhaps.
- B I'm sorry, but I'd struggle to get in for 8 a.m.

- A OK. Supposing we make it 8.30 a.m., would that work for you?
- B Yes, that sounds OK.
- A Great. Well, if that's OK with everyone else, then I'll see you all next Wednesday at 8.30 a.m.
- 3
- A Could I borrow your car for a bit over the weekend?
- B Well, it depends what you mean by 'for a bit'. I can't be without it all weekend.
- A No, just for a couple of hours on Saturday afternoon. I need to pick some stuff up from a friend's place a bit out of town.
- B OK. I'll have to ask Isabelle, in case she needs it, but it should be fine.

Page 51, Exercise 1c

7.6)))

- 1 I can get it to you on Monday. Is there a problem with that?
- 2 What if I were to get it to you by the end of the afternoon on Friday?
- 3 OK, provided I definitely have it before the weekend.
- 4 I was wondering if we could make next week's seminar a bit earlier.
- 5 Sorry, but what time did you have in mind?
- 6 Supposing we make it 8.30 a.m., would that work for you?
- 7 Yes, that sounds OK.
- 8 Well, it depends what you mean by 'for a bit'.
- 9 I'll have to ask Isabelle, in case she needs it ...

Unit 8 Plastic

Page 52, Exercise 2b

8.1)))

- 1 absorbent
- 2 biodegradable
- 3 durable
- 4 flexible
- 5 versatile
- 6 water-resistant
- 7 transparent

Page 53, Exercise 4a

8.2)))

- 1
- a I generally bring ceramic pots indoors in winter because they can crack if it gets very cold.
- b Any ceramic pots should be brought indoors in winter, otherwise they'll crack in the cold.
- 2
- a If the drawers are made of solid wood, they're bound to be pretty heavy.
- b The drawers might be quite heavy if they're made of solid wood.
- 3
- a The cutlery can't be made of solid silver, that would be incredibly expensive.
- b It's unlikely the cutlery's made of solid silver, it'd be too expensive.

- 4
a In the past, I suppose running shoes might have been made of leather, or cloth, maybe.
b I guess running shoes must have been made of leather in those days.
- 5
a There's a chance that the festival might be cancelled if the ground doesn't dry out in time.
b It's unlikely the festival will go ahead, because the ground's just too wet.
- 6
a Because they're made of stainless steel, these pans could last you a lifetime.
b These stainless steel pans are so durable, they're guaranteed to last a lifetime.
- 7
a We're sure to see more biodegradable plastics being used in the future.
b Biodegradable plastics may soon become more commonplace.
- 8
a It seems likely that early man largely used animal skins to stay warm and dry.
b Early man would have used animal skins for clothing and shelter.

Page 55, Exercise 4b

8.3)))

- 1 Despite this setback, we're going to press on with our plans.
- 2 The legal process could drag on for a year or more.
- 3 Don't put off repairs: it could be more costly in the long run.
- 4 Conventional light bulbs give off a lot of heat, which is a waste of energy.
- 5 These workshops build on students' existing practical experience.
- 6 Most dairy products will go off fairly quickly unless kept in the fridge.
- 7 Biodegradable plastics have been slow to catch on because they're expensive to produce.
- 8 Many agricultural vehicles can easily run on biodiesel.

Page 58, Exercises 2 & 3

8.4)))

I = interviewer P = psychologist

- I Our next guest is a leading psychologist and he's here today to talk about happiness. Dr Draymore, thank you so much for coming.
- P Thanks for inviting me, it's great to be here.
- I So, I'll get straight to the point. What is it that makes us feel happy?
- P Well, let's start with what doesn't, shall we? The most common mistake people make about happiness is to attach it to material gain. You know that house or car you're finally going to buy after years of saving up? Not going to make you really any happier, I'm afraid.
- I Is there any scientific evidence of that?

- P Plenty. For instance, over the last century or so, life has improved enormously in all financial and social indicators, but our levels of happiness have remained pretty much the same. Another thing that doesn't necessarily make you happier are those life-changing moments, like getting married. Studies indicate that when people get married, their level of happiness goes up considerably for the first two years, but then goes back to where they were.
- I That might not surprise some of our audience too much!
- P But the good news is that the same is true for tragic events too, like the death of someone close to you. There is a strong dip in our happiness, but it soon goes back to what some scientists call the base-line.
- I So how can we be happier then?
- P In short, a combination of three things: pleasure, engagement and meaning.
- I Let's talk a bit about each one.
- P Well, we all know what pleasure is: that warm feeling we get when we listen to a good joke or eat something nice. Engagement refers to how much the individual is connected to what they are doing. The perfect state of engagement is when you're so deeply involved in what you're doing that you forget about the world around you. So it's worth reflecting on how often you find yourself in such a state of mind and what kinds of activities get you there.
- I So would something like gardening count?
- P Oh, yes, hobbies are a great way to achieve this state. And then the last thing is what's known as 'meaning'. This refers to the knowledge that we are part of something bigger and that our life has a purpose.
- I So you need a bit of all three of these?
- P Yes, that's the magic formula, really. The problem is we live in a society that encourages people to focus mostly on just one of these things.
- I Would that be pleasure?
- P Exactly – fulfilling our immediate desires. Unfortunately, of the three, pleasure is the one that contributes the least to our overall happiness.
- I OK, so now we know what makes us happy, but what can we do to achieve it?
- P Well, the first thing to do is to find out what you've got too much of and what you're not getting enough of. As I said, most of us will find we're focusing too much on pleasure, but there'll also be quite a few career-minded people out there who are so engaged with their jobs that they're neglecting their pleasure. So if it's more pleasure you need, obviously you have to find out what things give you pleasure and do more of them. And another important point is studies show that pleasure increases if you're with a relative or friend.

- I I see. And you've already mentioned hobbies for engagement. What else?
- P Well, engagement is mostly a question of attitude: dedicate yourself as much as possible to the task at hand and try to concentrate on immersing yourself into it. Don't let your mind wander off in other directions.
- I And then finally, meaning.
- P Yes. Two very important things here: firstly, doing something selfless, like voluntary work for instance, is a great way to have a purpose in your life which is beyond your own personal needs and desires. And then there's also being grateful. Acknowledging what you're grateful for and who you are grateful to really does work wonders.
- I Well, that was all really fascinating. Dr Draymore is staying with us and will be taking your calls after this traffic update, so get your questions ready ...

Unit 9 Learning

Page 61, Exercise 3b

9.1)))

- 1
A Apparently, the college is going to get tablet computers for all students to use in class.
B Really? I'll believe it when I see it.
- 2
A A parcel arrived for you this morning.
B That'll be the book I ordered online.
- 3
A Can I speak to Mr Williams, please?
B If you'll just hold on a moment, I'll see if he's around.
- 4
A Are there any spaces left on the Spanish course?
B I'll check when I'm back in the office. I'll let you know.
- 5
A Do you think the brochures for the new course are going to be ready for next month?
B We'll see. It depends when we get the layout back from the designer.
- 6
A I'm not so sure that taking a class of eight-year-olds to the theatre is such a good idea.
B Don't worry, it's all organized. It'll be fine, you'll see.
- 7
A I'm thinking of handing in my notice. I feel as if I'm in an impossible situation.
B You can't resign. I simply won't hear of it. None of this is your fault.
- 8
A George is starting his final year of school this year.
B Wow, time flies. It won't be long till he's going off to university.

Page 61, Exercises 4b & c

9.2 »

- a It won't be long till he's going off to university.
- b I'll believe it when I see it.
- c We'll see.
- d I simply won't hear of it.
- e I'll let you know.
- f If you'll just hold on a moment, ...
- g It'll be fine, you'll see.
- h That'll be the book I ordered ...

Page 64, Exercise 2c

9.3 »

- 1 Some lectures are now being podcast on the university's website.
- 2 I think the venue's on the main square, but I'll text you the exact address.
- 3 The dining area is bookended by an open kitchen on one side and a long wooden bar on the other.
- 4 All suggestions were minuted and published in the proceedings.
- 5 Large producers are reluctant to green their products unless they can charge a premium.
- 6 In Toronto, she medalled in the 200 metres and the sprint relay.
- 7 The department will be actioning all the report's recommendations in the coming months.
- 8 Property prices have been trending upwards for the past eighteen months.

Page 65, Exercises 1a & c

9.4 »

This presentation will focus on the dramatic growth in the number of people entering higher education around the world in recent decades.

First of all, I'd like to look at some statistics. According to UNESCO, the percentage of adults worldwide who received tertiary education rose from 19% in 2000 to 29% in 2010 and this figure has continued to soar. To a great extent, that growth has come from countries like China and India, with rapidly growing economies. But there has also been significant growth in parts of Africa as well.

Having looked at a few figures, I'd now like to consider the effects of this trend. Broadly speaking, widening access to higher education is seen as a positive thing. Qualified graduates are in demand in what is increasingly becoming a knowledge-based global economy.

However, not everyone sees this higher education boom in such a positive light. Some experts take the view that encouraging too many young people to pursue a degree-level education will lead to higher levels of graduate unemployment, as economies around the world are simply unable to absorb such large, qualified workforces.

Also, the effect of rapid expansion on the quality of education remains to be seen. Only time will tell if a growing number of students in some countries, accompanied by a lack of adequate funding and not enough qualified academic staff might result in lower standards.

However, there's no denying that greater participation in higher education is set to continue, with some predictions suggesting that the number of tertiary-level students worldwide will reach 262 million by 2025.

Unit 10 New

Page 67, Exercises 2b & c

10.1 »

- 1 I've got a contactless card and I've never had any difficulty in using it. It's really simple.
- 2 With contactless cards, there could be a risk of paying for something accidentally if your card's too near a reader.
- 3 I think if I had a choice between paying by card or using a mobile app, I'd probably just use my phone.
- 4 Payment apps have really good security controls so there's no reason for users to worry about how safe they are.
- 5 There's been quite a bit of debate about whether peer-to-peer payment apps will really catch on.
- 6 PayPal is just one of the big-name companies to have cornered the mobile payment market.
- 7 I'm not sure I really see the point of wearable tech to pay with. It's just more stuff to carry round.
- 8 As an artist, this technology is opening up new opportunities for me to sell my work without always having to ask people for cash.

Page 68, Exercise 1a

10.2 »

1
When I was a teenager, I got the opportunity to be an extra in a Hollywood movie that was being filmed on location near to my home town. At first, I was really excited about maybe getting to meet some of the famous cast, but actually what was far more eye-opening was seeing all the behind-the-scenes work. It was amazing to see how the cameramen captured shots from every angle and I loved watching all the technical expertise that went into carefully creating exactly what the director was looking for. I even enjoyed watching the more mundane stuff, like the wardrobe people, the make-up artists and the catering crew preparing meals for all those people. It was a phenomenal logistical operation. In the end, I think I only appeared on screen for about four seconds, but for me, it wasn't really about my role.

The whole experience just gave me a totally new perspective on the film industry. It was years ago now, but I still can't watch a movie without thinking about everything that went into making it.

2

As a young engineering student, I was lucky enough to go to Tunisia for two months to work on a small-scale project aimed at using renewable energy to desalinate sea water into fresh drinking water. It was a fascinating project from an engineering perspective, using some really innovative techniques. We stayed in a small town on the edge of the desert and the thing that struck me most was the geography and atmosphere of the place. I can still vividly remember waking on my first morning and looking out on an absolutely breathtaking landscape. It was so unlike anything I'd ever seen before, with sand and rock stretching as far as the eye could see. And the climate was a new experience for me, too. Of course, I'd been relatively prepared for the heat. I'd been told that we'd only be able to work in the mornings and evenings, and not during the hottest time of day. But what really caught me by surprise was how the temperature dropped so dramatically after sunset. And of course, the extremes of the environment hugely affected how people lived there. I learned a lot from how their daily routines fitted in with the patterns of heat and cold, and actually seeing how water use had to be carefully managed gave all the more motivation to make the project a success.

Page 69, Exercise 2

10.3 »

- 1 This model *only* comes with a free carry case.
- 2 *Only* this model comes with a free carry case.
- 3 The kids *really* enjoyed helping out in the garden.
- 4 The kids enjoyed helping out in the garden, *really*.
- 5 The participants in a webinar can *only* type comments in the chat box.
- 6 *Only* the participants in a webinar can type comments in the chat box.
- 7 I'm only giving *Chloe* a lift to the cinema.
- 8 I'm only giving Chloe a lift to the *cinema*.
- 9 I'm only giving Chloe a lift *to* the cinema.

Page 71, Exercises 1a & c

10.4 »

R = Rob, J = Jake, K = Kerry, N = Nicki

R With all the changes going on in the neighbourhood, what with the new sports centre being built and all the work that's going to involve, improving parking and stuff, we need a way of keeping local residents up to date with what's going on and how the changes are going to affect

them. The local council have offered us a small amount of funding, so we need to decide how best to spend it. Any ideas?

J Personally, I'd go for a website. We can post all the latest news and even have links to other relevant information, too. It'd be a perfect way to keep everyone up-to-date.

K I understand what you're saying. That would work really well for some people, but what about the older residents? I'm not sure all of them have internet access, so they'd be a bit left out.

R True. It might be better just to have a simple noticeboard, perhaps outside the newsagent's or somewhere like that. Most people go that way pretty regularly. That way everyone would see it.

J But wouldn't that just get a bit messy? Notices would get wet and torn, and people might just start pinning up adverts and stuff that wasn't relevant.

K Well, one way of avoiding that would be to have something that's properly enclosed, behind glass or whatever. And maybe it could be locked so only people posting official notices would be able to open it.

R Nicki, what's your feeling on this? Would a website or a regular noticeboard be better?

N Well, it could be that we do both. I know we don't have a lot of money, but it's easy enough to set up a free website nowadays and then we can spend the cash on a decent noticeboard, like Kerry suggested.

R I think you could be right, then everyone would be able to access the information in the way that best suits them. And if you think about it, if you're posting some information on the website, it's not that difficult to just print out a hard copy and stick it on the noticeboard, is it? OK, that's decided then. I'll look into getting a noticeboard and Jake, maybe you could check out some free website hosting services ...

Unit 11 Origins

Page 75, Exercise 2

11.1 »»

- 1 Our staff acted in a completely responsible way at all times.
- 2 Social media is responsible for many of the most recent additions to the language.
- 3 The decision to relocate to a cheaper out-of-town premises was purely economic.
- 4 He advised the government on their economic policy.
- 5 Under the present system, children start studying English aged ten.
- 6 We can detect whether the disease is present using a simple blood test.
- 7 As a writer, he makes a conscious effort to avoid English loan words.
- 8 The patient was barely conscious when she was brought in.

9 I'd like to thank everyone concerned for all their hard work.

10 The school received a number of calls from concerned parents.

Page 76, Exercises 2b & c

11.2 »»

- 1 Whichever variety of chilli you choose to grow, it'll need plenty of water.
- 2 There are no artificial ingredients whatsoever in our organic lemonade.
- 3 I love fresh asparagus, no matter how it's cooked.
- 4 Whoever came up with the idea of garlic ice cream?
- 5 The staff canteen offers around half a dozen different lunch options; salad, pizza, soup or whatever.
- 6 Whenever the weather's good, we have a barbecue.

Page 77, Exercise 5b

11.3 »»

- 1 You'll need two green peppers sliced lengthways into thin strips.
- 2 Sprinkle over a generous amount of freshly grated parmesan cheese.
- 3 Then add the two lightly-beaten egg yolks and stir to combine with the flour.
- 4 The sauce is perfect served with grilled chicken or fish.
- 5 Wash and peel the potatoes, and then cut them into cubes.
- 6 Add the remaining ingredients and season to taste.
- 7 Garnish the dish with finely-chopped mint and parsley.
- 8 Pour the melted chocolate over the strawberries and serve with cream.

Page 79, Exercise 1

11.4 »»

- 1 The day before, it felt like the whole country was on the move, rushing home to be with their families.
- 2 At midnight, bells started ringing out all across the city.
- 3 The fireworks were spectacular to watch and stunningly loud.
- 4 Several cities have tried to ban firecrackers on safety grounds.
- 5 The streets were packed with local families and tourists all mingling together.
- 6 I took my whole family and I think everyone had an amazing time.

Unit 12 Memory

Page 83, Exercises 5a & b

12.1 »»

- 1 far-reaching implications
- 2 substantial difficulties
- 3 reproduce a string of up to seven words
- 4 misinterpret the data
- 5 fundamentally flawed
- 6 a disproportionate response

Page 85, Exercise 1c

12.2 »»

A Did you hear about that pensioner who had a voicemail message recorded by his late wife deleted by his phone company?

B No, what happened?

A Well, apparently he'd kept the message for something like fourteen years and he used to listen to it when he was feeling lonely, you know, just to hear his wife's voice. But then, he's had to have his phone upgraded or something and while the engineer's been working on the phone, he's only gone and deleted the message.

B Oh no! He must've been gutted!

A Yes, he was absolutely devastated. What made it worse was that the phone company had promised that the message would be OK.

B Oh. That's awful.

A Yes, so anyway, at first the company's just offered him some compensation, which, of course, isn't what he wants. But then after a bit more investigation, they managed to retrieve the message after all.

B So it was saved on their servers, was it?

A I guess it must've been. Anyway, the guy was understandably overjoyed when he heard the message again.

B Oh, what an incredibly touching story!

Page 86, Exercises 2 & 3b

12.3 »»

Today we're going to look into one of the most heated debates in the history of biology, sociology and many other sciences: nature versus nurture. The key question is how much of who you are is due to genetics and how much is down to your upbringing and the environmental factors therein. There should be time for questions at the end.

In terms of genetics, what a growing number of researchers believe nowadays is that genes don't determine directly what you will become but, rather, offer predispositions which might manifest themselves or not, depending on environmental influences.

Scientists have discovered that within the approximately 35,000 genes every single one of us carries, lie the mechanisms that can influence personality, such as impulsivity, emotional intelligence and even addiction to certain substances. Research seems to indicate that you can have a sweet tooth, or at least be very inclined to have one, even before you're born.

A good example of how nature can influence personality is the gene FOXP2, in the chromosome 7. Mutations in this gene lead to problems in speech and language, which in turn may make it more likely for that child to become shy and quiet as they compare themselves with their siblings and their peers. So, you see, whereas there isn't a gene for shyness, your body might contain strong

influencing factors that make you much more inclined to that type of behaviour.

Let's look at the other side of the coin.

Amongst those scientists who are strong believers in the importance of the environment, the main controversy is regarding who influences your personality the most.

There are those who believe the parents are mainly responsible for the development of a child's character. Mostly by imitation, children pick up from their parents different patterns of behaviour and personality traits, both positive, such as self-confidence or honesty, and negative, like aggressiveness and anxiety.

Others defend the theory that peers, mostly friends, have a much stronger role. The importance of what is often called horizontal relationships is dictated by a primitive survival instinct. Ever since humans have walked the earth, we have felt a strong need to be integrated into a social group, which in the past would have made the difference between survival and death. So when a child nowadays identifies themselves with a particular group, they tend to have to behave according to its internal rules in order to be accepted. Peer pressure can therefore lead not only to habit formation, but potentially to personality changes, especially when younger.

So, considering the arguments presented, both sides have a strong case supported by solid evidence. This historical controversy, however, seems to finally be coming to an end, as modern research indicates that the result of this battle is actually perhaps technically a draw. A recent collaboration between scientists from Australia and Holland concluded that 49% of human traits and diseases are due to genetic influence, while 51% are caused by environmental factors.

The bottom line is that both nature and nurture play significant roles in the development of your personality. From there, we'll be in a better position to ascertain how personality can, or indeed whether it should, be modified. There are interesting times ahead, that's for sure. Now on the screen you can see the titles of papers from a number of leading scientists which ...

Answer key

Unit 1 Change

1.1 Up to speed? page 4

Grammar comparing

- 1 1 nearly as much
2 Far more of
3 much more leisurely
4 as long as
5 nowhere near
6 a lot less
7 significantly longer
8 the more

2a 1 b 2 g 3 d 4 a 5 h 6 c

- 3 1 more quickly
2 much more condensed
3 far less patience
4 much shorter
5 no less
6 a bit longer
7 ever more creative
8 more likely
9 a little longer
10 no more than
11 significantly more quickly
12 much less
13 every bit as
14 the more vivid a

Vocabulary time and speed

- 4 1 time flies
2 time drags
3 behind the times
4 up to speed
5 time management
6 Time and again
7 the last minute
8 With hindsight
9 short and sharp
- 5 1 behind the times
2 with hindsight
3 Time and again
4 short and sharp
5 at the last minute
6 up to speed

1.2 Managing change page 6

Grammar continuous forms

- 1 1 has been gradually changing
2 are recognizing
3 are bringing up
4 are looking after
5 do
6 had been doing

- 7 she's not working
8 are increasingly choosing
9 chooses
10 usually work

- 2 1 Flexible working is becoming more popular.
2 I have been working from home since last year.
3 Both of them were commuting for three hours each day.
4 Getting on for a quarter of our staff are choosing to work part time.
5 More female staff are returning to work after maternity leave.
6 The company is adapting very well to flexible working practices.
7 The job-share arrangements are working well in practice.
8 We will be introducing the new flexitime system from next month./ From next month, we will be introducing the new flexitime system.

- 3 1 was working
2 carried on
3 started
4 was receiving
5 was becoming/had become
6 approached
7 has been attending
8 works
9 's/is working out/has been working out
10 is watching

Vocabulary change

- 4 1 resist
2 implementing
3 consultation
4 adapt
5 bring about
6 imposed
7 facilitate

5a and c

Noun	Verb	Adjective
1 <u>resistance</u>	<u>resist</u>	2 <u>resistant</u>
3 <u>implementation</u>	<u>implement</u>	
<u>consultation</u>	4 <u>consult</u>	
5 <u>adaptability</u> / 6 <u>adaptation</u>	<u>adapt</u>	7 <u>adaptable</u> / 8 <u>adapted</u>
9 <u>imposition</u>	<u>impose</u>	10 <u>imposing</u>
11 <u>facilitation</u> / 12 <u>facilitator</u>	<u>facilitate</u>	

- 5d All word families have changing stress except *resist/resistance/resistant*

- 6 1 imposition
2 consulted
3 implementation
4 resistant
5 adaptable
6 facilitated

1.3 Vocabulary development page 8

Vocabulary using a dictionary

- 1 1 Word class: adjective, noun, verb
2 Grammar: uncountable, transitive, intransitive
3 Style/register: formal, informal, literary
4 Connotation: approving, disapproving, humorous
- 2 1 variety
2 definition
3 spelling
4 pronunciation
5 dependent preposition
6 example
- 3 1 (*sidewalk*) *variety* = North American English; word class = noun
2 (*kiddies*) style/register = informal; word class = noun
3 (*petite*) connotation = approving; word class = adjective
4 (*clear as mud*) style/register = informal and/or connotation = humorous; idiom
5 (*advice*) grammar = uncountable; word class = noun
6 (*implement*) style/register = formal; word class = verb; grammar = transitive
(*emphasize*) spelling = -ise or -ize; word class = verb; grammar = transitive

Vocabulary extension

- 4a 1 idiom 5 synonym
2 somebody 6 abbreviation
3 phrasal verb 7 something
4 British English 8 opposite
- 4b 1 sth 4 abbr
2 syn 5 opp
3 idm

1.4 Writing and speaking page 9

Writing a report based on a graph

- 1
- 1 In
 - 2 grew; between
 - 3 By; stood
 - 4 next three years; to
 - 5 According to
- 2 *Suggested answers:*
- 1 A report published in 2015 showed
 - 2 increased rapidly
 - 3 rose from around 7% in 2000 to 42% in January 2015
 - 4 is expected to reach 45% by/in 2016
 - 5 in terms of internet access

Speaking vague language (1): approximation

- 3a *Suggested answers:*
- 1 *A number of* libraries are facing closure in our city.
 - 2 Dozens of staff are in danger of losing their jobs this month.
 - 3 Staff costs account for upwards of/just over 80% of the libraries' budget.
 - 4 The council needs to make approximately/just over/upwards of £1 million of cuts in public spending.
 - 5 Nationally over the past five years, library visits have fallen by approximately/just over 15%.
 - 6 The number of books being lent is down by nearly 20%.
 - 7 Hundreds of libraries are threatened with closure across the country.
 - 8 An incredible number of people have signed petitions to try and save their local libraries.

Unit 2 Feats

2.1 Feats of nature page 10

Grammar noun phrases

- 1
- 1 sights
 - 2 migration
 - 3 days
 - 4 work
 - 5 animals
- 2
- 1 *an enormous superpod of dolphins up to 5,000 strong*
 - 2 an incredibly small insect with delicate, silvery wings
 - 3 the incredible acrobatic skills of this tiny hummingbird
 - 4 ultra slow-motion filming techniques to capture insects in flight
 - 5 the world's largest gathering of grazing animals
 - 6 a fascinating insight into the life of this shy creature
 - 7 some basic scientific facts about plant biology

3 Suggested answers:

- 1 *the chameleon's amazing ability to alter its skin colour to match its surroundings*
- 2 a six-tonne male African elephant (that/which is/was) standing in the middle of the road
- 3 the incredible patience needed to wait (for)/whilst waiting (for) many hours to capture the perfect shot
- 4 the critically endangered snow leopard (that/which is) found in the mountains of central Asia

Vocabulary phrases with adverbs

- 4
- 1 highly
 - 2 utterly
 - 3 radically
 - 4 seriously
 - 5 particularly
 - 6 exceedingly
 - 7 awfully
 - 8 critically
- 5
- 1 The two species have adapted to live in *radically* different climates.
 - 2 In the autumn, the leaves of the trees create **unbelievably** beautiful patterns as they reflect on the surface of the lake.
 - 3 The plant only grows on steep cliff faces that are **awfully** hard to reach.
 - 4 The rock types found on the east coast of the Atlantic are **remarkably** similar to those found on the west coast.
 - 5 The mayfly is just one part of this **extraordinarily** complex wetland ecosystem.
 - 6 Many species of frogs are already reaching **critically** low population levels.
 - 7 These tropical waters support **an incredibly** diverse range of marine life to explore.
- 6
- 1 *completely lifeless*
 - 2 particularly well-adapted
 - 3 incredibly harsh
 - 4 absolutely vital
 - 5 unbelievably efficient
 - 6 seriously compromised
 - 7 utterly terrifying
 - 8 incredibly long
 - 9 remarkably unharmed

2.2 Feats of engineering page 12

Vocabulary collocations for describing problems and solutions

- 1
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 a | 5 g |
| 2 e | 6 c |
| 3 f | 7 h |
| 4 b | 8 d |
- 2
- 1 realize
 - 2 poses/presents
 - 3 tackling
 - 4 presents
 - 5 overcome
 - 6 entail
 - 7 come up with

Grammar perfect forms

- 3b
- 1 has changed
 - 2 has been taken
 - 3 ran
 - 4 will be broken
 - 5 has brought about
 - 6 have been allowed
 - 7 are able to dedicate
 - 8 have played
 - 9 have come
 - 10 have transformed
- 4
- 1 In your view, which area of science has made the biggest contribution to sport?
 - 2 How significant have advances in the science of nutrition been for athletes? / How have advances in the science of nutrition been significant for athletes?
 - 3 Do you think sprinters could have broken the ten-second barrier without modern sports equipment?
 - 4 Have female sprinters been getting faster at the same rate as men?
 - 5 Which other sports have benefitted most from scientific developments?
 - 6 How have advances in technology helped disabled athletes?
- 5
- 1 *had ever run*, had become
 - 2 have also been getting/have also got
 - 3 might have achieved
 - 4 have been timed
 - 5 will have been broken
 - 6 have revolutionized
 - 7 have seen
 - 8 wouldn't/would not have been

2.3 Vocabulary development page 14

Vocabulary collocations of perception and sound

- 1
- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 environment | 4 vision |
| 2 noise | 5 difference |
| 3 silence | |

- 2 1 in (a noisy) environment
2 attention to
3 difference between
4 difference in
5 in (total) silence
6 feat of

Vocabulary extension

- 3 1 familiar smells
2 sweet scent of
3 smells faintly of
4 has quite a bitter taste
5 stronger flavour
6 tastes delicious
7 experience the usual cold-like symptoms
8 have a high temperature
9 lose your appetite
10 feel an uncomfortable sensation
- 4 1 a *familiar/strong* smell
2 a *fresh/sweet* scent
3 smell *faintly/strongly* of
4 a *bitter/sour* taste
5 a *strong/subtle* flavour
6 taste *delicious/sweet*
7 *mild/cold-like* symptoms
8 *develop/have* a high temperature
9 *lose/regain* your appetite
10 feel *a pain/a* sensation

2.4 Writing and speaking page 15

Writing a summary

- 1 *Suggested answers:*
1 can easily get lost
2 look lost and offer help
3 it affects equipment, but it's OK in reception, cafés, etc
4 tell them where they can go to phone instead
5 ask someone/a colleague or send the person/tell them to go

Speaking an informal talk

- 2b 1 I think 6 I suppose
2 brilliant 7 just a bit
3 utterly 8 kind of
4 incredibly 9 all the time
5 really 10 totally

2.5 Reading for pleasure page 16

The Open Window

- 1 The best description is 2.
2 The writer doesn't use the word *romance* with the usual meaning. Here, it probably means *an ability to create stories and fantasy in a quick-witted way*.

Review: Units 1 and 2 page 17

Grammar

- 1 *Suggested answers:*
1 The weather was *nowhere near* as warm as we'd expected.
2 There must be a consultation between the developers and local residents about the plans.
3 The store in Posnań wasn't nearly as successful as the one in Wrocław.
4 The greater the number of tourists, the more hotels and restaurants you get.
5 There were a number of problems with/after the implementation of the new regulations.
6 Last time I visited, the renovation of the building was still in progress.

Vocabulary

- 2 1 remarkably/amazingly
2 adapt
3 implement
4 entails
5 human
6 amazingly/remarkably
7 overcome
8 pay
9 again/time again
- 3 1 c 4 b
2 f 5 a
3 e 6 d

Speaking

- 4 1 *up to*
2 a bit
3 or so
4 somewhere in the region of
5 a few
6 I suppose

Unit 3 Teams

3.1 The perfect team page 18

Vocabulary behaviour and attitude

- 1 1 boost 5 open
2 high 6 centre
3 get 7 sitting
4 see 8 maker
- 2a 1 open to new ideas
2 to be the centre of attention
3 sit on the fence
4 seeing the big picture
5 get their hands dirty
6 have high expectations
7 (a bit of) a troublemaker
8 boost (employee/team/people's/ everyone's) morale

- 2b a 5 e 3
b 8 f 6
c 4 g 1
d 2 h 7

Grammar auxiliary verbs

- 3 1 do 6 did
2 were 7 do
3 had 8 don't
4 didn't 9 am
5 do 10 Do
- 4a 1 *I have*
2 have I
3 I was
4 I am
5 They will do (also possible: They will)
6 do
7 am I
8 Do

3.2 Team game page 20

Grammar articles

- 1a 1 - 7 the
2 a 8 a
3 - 9 the
4 a 10 the
5 the 11 the
6 the 12 a
- 2 1 - 12 a
2 The 13 a
3 - 14 The
4 the 15 a
5 a 16 the
6 the 17 a
7 a 18 The
8 The 19 the
9 - 20 -
10 a 21 the
11 a 22 the

Vocabulary success and failure

- 3 1 c 7 d
2 l 8 i
3 k 9 b
4 a 10 f
5 g 11 j
6 h 12 e
- 4 1 overcome 7 turned
2 get 8 make
3 give 9 do
4 paid 10 come
5 working 11 made
6 breakdown

3.3 Vocabulary development page 22

Vocabulary prepositional phrases

- 1 1 in 6 without
2 out 7 on
3 at 8 at
4 under 9 at
5 At 10 For

Vocabulary extension

- 2 1 b 6 a
2 a 7 b
3 a 8 a
4 b 9 c
5 b

3.4 Speaking and writing page 23

Speaking checking and rephrasing

- 1a 1 you mean when
2 I meant was
3 catch that
4 I was saying is
5 with me
6 am I right in thinking that
7 follow you
8 put it another way
9 In other words
- 1b 1 Are you with me?
2 I'll put it another way.
3 Sorry, I didn't catch that (last part).

Writing a proposal

- 2a a purpose
b following
c were asked
d introducing
e It is clear from
f Such a
g was commissioned
h outweighed
i could include

2b Suggested answers:

- 1 a
2 c, e, g
3 b, f, i
4 d, h

2c Suggested order:

- 1 a 6 i/f
2 g 7 f/i
3 c 8 d
4 e 9 h
5 b

Unit 4 Responsibility

4.1 Age of responsibility page 24

Grammar degrees of obligation

- 1a 1 you need to 5 must
2 has to 6 be necessary
3 don't allow 7 it isn't compulsory
4 can 8 you should

1b Suggested answers:

- 1 are not usually allowed to travel without an adult
2 can make arrangements for
3 need to wait until their flight has departed
4 don't always have to use the airline's unaccompanied children's service

- 2 1 C 5 C
2 N 6 N
3 A 7 C
4 C 8 A

- 3 1 Under-sixteens are supposed to be monitored by cabin staff./Cabin staff are supposed to monitor under-sixteens.
2 You'd better check whether the hotel allows children under five.
3 There are no age restrictions, so it's up to parents to decide whether the course is suitable for their children.
4 We don't allow our children to use the internet unsupervised./Our children aren't allowed to use the internet unsupervised.
5 In most countries, you can't vote in elections until you reach eighteen.
6 In many schools, (wearing) a uniform is compulsory for children up to the age of sixteen./In many schools, it is compulsory for children to wear a uniform up to the age of sixteen.
7 Students over sixteen don't need their parents' permission to go on school trips.
8 It isn't necessary to book a separate seat for under-fives.

Vocabulary responsibility

- 4 1 b 5 d
2 h 6 e
3 g 7 c
4 a 8 f
- 5 1 reliable 5 take
2 responsible 6 blame
3 counting 7 owns
4 charge 8 held

6 Suggested answers:

- 1 We need a reliable business partner to help us expand the company./ We need a business partner we can count on to help us expand the company.
2 Charlie Coleman is in charge of day-to-day operations in New York./ Charlie Coleman is responsible for day-to-day operations in New York.
3 We want to recruit someone to take care of customer queries and complaints.
4 We are directly responsible for the success of the project.
5 One of the boys finally owned up to posting the comments.
6 I'm sure we can count on Abi to sort everything out for us.
7 In around 70% of road accidents involving cyclists, the motorist is to blame./In around 70% of road accidents involving cyclists, the motorist is responsible.
8 Can a ten-year-old child really be held responsible for their actions?

4.2 The caring generation page 26

Vocabulary phrases with care

- 1 1 Take care
2 carefree
3 handle with care
4 health care
5 careless
6 carer
7 caring
8 a care in the world

- 2a 1 b 4 c
2 d 5 e
3 a

- 2b 1 a carefree lifestyle
2 a health care professional
3 a daycare centre
4 a caring role
5 a careless remark

- 3 1 carer
2 daycare
3 couldn't care less/don't care
4 take care of/care for
5 health care
6 caring/health care professions/system

Grammar passives

4a a 3 b 2 c 1

4b and c *Suggested answers:*

- 1 Passengers are not permitted (c), Customers using mobile phones are kindly asked (c), A toilet can be found (a)
- 2 little in-depth research has been carried out (a or b), It is estimated that (d), little is understood about (d)
- 3 The questionnaire was tested in the UK and translated, researchers were recruited and trained, Participants were given – all b

5a 1 *is believed to have arrived*
2 are not/aren't allowed
3 are visited
4 get forgotten
5 were analysed
6 was established
7 got damaged
8 is understood to have changed

5c *Suggested answers:*

- | | |
|-----|----------|
| 1 d | 5 a or b |
| 2 c | 6 a |
| 3 a | 7 e |
| 4 e | 8 d |

6 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 150 patients were interviewed about their experience at the hospital.
- 2 The facilities are being designed to maximize accessibility for disabled students.
- 3 This new scheme is intended to attract more young people to the caring professions.
- 4 People outside the target age group were excluded from the study.
- 5 Patients are checked on at least once every hour (by nurses).
- 6 Lenny's been cared for at home (by his family) for the past ten years.

4.3 Vocabulary development page 28

Vocabulary connotation

1a 1 P 5 N
2 P 6 P
3 N 7 N
4 P 8 N

1b 1 *reckless*
2 simple
3 overcautious
4 nosy
5 peaceful
6 carefree
7 slim
8 cheap

2 1 challenging
2 low-cost
3 curious
4 underweight
5 frivolous
6 bland
7 adventurous
8 dull

Vocabulary extension

3a 1 c 5 d
2 b 6 h
3 e 7 f
4 a 8 g

3b approving 5, 8
disapproving 2, 3, 6, 7
humorous 1, 4, 7

4.4 Writing and speaking page 29

Writing a balanced argument essay

1 1 Those in favour of
2 Furthermore
3 while
4 we also need to consider
5 Those against
6 could result in
7 Another drawback of
8 Consequently

2 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 In conclusion, it seems that
- 2 On balance, though
- 3 it is, nevertheless, also true to say that
- 4 on the whole

Speaking formal negotiations

3a 1 do you mean
2 accept
3 to look at
4 just come in
5 we have
6 put that to
7 work

4.5 Listening for pleasure page 30

Sitting is ...

2 The best description is 2.
3 1 health 7 water
2 spine 8 park
3 brain 9 files
4 heart 10 meetings
5 death 11 productive
6 circles 12 smoking

Review: Units 3 and 4 page 31

Grammar

1 1 c, h 3 d, g
2 a, f 4 b, e

2 1 a week
2 a really nice pair of new shoes
3 the painting of Nelson Mandela
4 an interesting book about artificial intelligence
5 the guy talking to Vlatka
6 the terms and conditions

Vocabulary

3 1 at a loss
2 were without a care in the world
3 to blame for
4 overcome
5 paid off
6 curious
7 reckless
8 did really well

4 1 on 4 with
2 under 5 on
3 up 6 to

Speaking

5 1 catch/hear/get
2 come
3 put
4 expand
5 follow/get
6 look

Unit 5 Power

5.1 Who holds the power? page 32

Grammar relative clauses

1a 1 b 2 c 3 a

1b 1 which 6 which
2 which 7 in which
3 who 8 when/in which
4 of which 9 who
5 which/who 10 who

1c 1 Number 7: *in which* can be omitted without any text changes.
2 The following can be omitted with some changes to the text:
1 ... especially the press, *seen to* have a significant influence on ...
2 It's a term *thought to* have been used by Edmund Burke ...
6 *This prediction* has arguably proved ...
9 In an age when almost anyone *with* an internet connection can ...
10 These individuals, *now reaching* many millions ...

2 1 *which/that/-*
2 who/which/that
3 who/that
4 for whom
5 who are/that are/-
6 who/that
7 which/that/-
8 in which/that

- 3a**
- 1 For an increasing number of people, the mainstream media is not the first source which they turn to for news.
 - 2 Blogging is just one way in which individuals and groups can publish their ideas to a wider audience.
 - 3 Social media sites like Twitter and YouTube also provide a platform which can be used to spread information and opinion.
 - 4 News reporters can't always get to the place where an incident has happened right away.
 - 5 'Citizen journalists' can often publish news and pictures of events the moment when they happen.
 - 6 A member of the public can post video footage online of a major incident and the emergency services who are attending it within seconds.
 - 7 Online media is easily accessible to a wide range of people, which means that everyone can now have a voice.
 - 8 Individuals who are seeking to influence political policy are starting to challenge the traditional, organized and well-funded lobby groups.

Vocabulary common phrases with relative pronouns

- 4**
- 1 as a result of which
 - 2 to the point where
 - 3 the way in which
 - 4 in which case
 - 5 the day when
 - 6 only a few of whom
 - 7 several of whom
 - 8 the reason why
- 5**
- 1 the way in which
 - 2 as a result of which
 - 3 in which case/as a result of which
 - 4 several of whom
 - 5 to the point where

5.2 The power of the sun page 34

Grammar quantifiers

- 1**
- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 neither of | 6 all we know |
| 2 nearly enough | 7 each of these |
| 3 any | 8 either of |
| 4 neither of | 9 the whole day |
| 5 every | 10 dark enough |
- 2** (answers in brackets are less natural)
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 each (every) | 5 number |
| 2 several | 6 All |
| 3 Most (Many) | 7 neither |
| 4 few | 8 Many/Most |
- 3**
- 1 If the sky's clear enough (of clouds), you ...
 - 2 You can see the lights from any of the countries .../any country ...

- 3 ...the best time to see the lights is in either/either in November or February.
- 4 All twenty-five rooms at the hotel have .../The twenty-five rooms at the hotel all have ...
- 5 Each room also has a/it's own telescope .../The rooms also each have a/their own telescope ...
- 6 ... you'll see the aurora every night, as ...

Vocabulary phrases with of to describe quantity

- 4a**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 b | 5 e |
| 2 h | 6 g |
| 3 c | 7 a |
| 4 f | 8 d |
- 4c** (probable order from least to greatest)
- 2 absence of
 - 8 an acute scarcity of
 - 4 a shortage of
 - 1 a handful of
 - 3 dozens of
 - 6 a great deal of
 - 5 a surplus of
 - 7 an excessive number of
- 4d**
- | | |
|---------------------|-----|
| 1 B | 5 B |
| 2 C (in most cases) | 6 B |
| 3 C | 7 C |
| 4 U | 8 B |

5.3 Vocabulary development page 36

Vocabulary compound adjectives and nouns

- 1**
- 1 narrow-minded
 - 2 time-consuming
 - 3 eye-catching
 - 4 world-famous
 - 5 brightly-lit
 - 6 fast-moving
 - 7 long-lasting
 - 8 old-fashioned
- 2**
- 1 At the weekend, *she does a five-kilometre run*.
 - 2 On average, they work an eight-hour day.
 - 3 They have a twelve-year-old son.
 - 4 Since the late nineties, there's been a fourfold price increase.
 - 5 The post office is only a five-minute walk (away).
 - 6 We're going on a two-week holiday in Thailand.
 - 7 The coffee comes in 250-gram packets.
 - 8 Katherine Hepburn was a record-breaking four-time Oscar winner.

Vocabulary extension

- 3**
- 1 media
 - 2 public
 - 3 ticket(s)
 - 4 back
 - 5 stop(s)

5.4 Speaking and writing page 37

Speaking managing conversations

- 1a**
- 1 you mean
 - 2 agree more
 - 3 follow you
 - 4 the point
 - 5 you're right
 - 6 you mean
 - 7 no idea

Writing emphasis: inversion and cleft sentences

- 2**
- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 do I have | 4 It's not |
| 2 the thing | 5 What |
| 3 Not only | 6 would I |
- 3**
- 1 Not only is a vegetarian diet healthier, but it's also more environmentally sustainable./
Not only is a vegetarian diet more environmentally sustainable, but it's also healthier.
 - 2 What really concerns me is the amount of resources used up in farming animals for meat./The amount of resources used up in farming animals for meat is what really concerns me.
 - 3 Little do people realize how much wildlife habitat is cleared for cattle farming.
 - 4 The reason I don't eat meat is because I'm unhappy about the way farm animals are treated.
 - 5 No way would I ever eat meat now.
 - 6 This dish is so tasty, even confirmed meat-eaters will love it.

Unit 6 Play

6.1 Play games and save the planet? page 38

Grammar uses of would

- 1a**
- 1 educationalists
 - 2 cognitive skills
 - 3 gamification
 - 4 adaptive learning
- 1b**
- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1 would be | 6 would be |
| 2 would | 7 Wouldn't |
| 3 would rather | 8 would be |
| 4 would | 9 you'd have thought |
| 5 would have | 10 would |

- 2a 1 T 4 F
2 F 5 F
3 T

- 2b 1 *I would've thought of games*
2 it wouldn't be approved
3 we'd have taken
4 They'd have had
5 they'd have learnt
6 they wouldn't be able
7 they think would happen
8 as you'd expect
9 wouldn't have

Vocabulary preferences

- 3 1 taken a dislike
2 take great pleasure
3 be an inspiration
4 are role models
5 express a preference
6 have the highest regard
- 4 1 d 4 e
2 a 5 f
3 b 6 c
- 5 1 *express/give* (a preference) *for*
2 *be/provide* (a role model) *to/for*
3 *take* (a dislike) *to*, *overcome* (a dislike) *of*
4 *take* (pleasure) *in*, *get* (pleasure) *from*
5 *be/serve* as (an inspiration) *to/for*
6 *show/have* (regard) *for*
- 6 *Suggested answers:*
1 Most gamers expressed/gave/had a (clear/strong) preference for this console.
2 Many of the testers took a dislike to the central character.
3 Gamers take (great/real) pleasure in/get (great/real) pleasure from improving their personal best score.
4 Traditional Manga cartoons have been/have served as an inspiration to many modern games designers.
5 Those/People within the video gaming industry have high/the highest regard for Shigeru Miyamoto./Shigeru Miyamoto is held in high/the highest regard (by those/by people) within the video gaming industry.

6.2 The invention of leisure page 40

Grammar verb patterns

- 1 1 to listen
2 to have done
3 having spent
4 to have missed
5 having enjoyed
6 to have been

- 7 to have had
8 having
9 to have lost
10 to have drifted
11 to have given
12 of looking

- 2a 1 e 6 b
2 c 7 d
3 g 8 f
4 h 9 j
5 i 10 a

- 3 1 We were fortunate *to have missed the worst of* the Friday night traffic.
2 The train was soon full so I was glad to have booked a seat in advance.
3 I'm really sorry not to have told/about not telling you about it earlier.
4 Traffic was reported to have been queuing/to be queuing over two hours because of the accident.
5 The CEO was to have stood down but decided to carry on in spite of the poor results.
6 I would have liked to have gone/would like to have gone but I couldn't make it in the end.

Vocabulary leisure, relaxation and stress

- 4 1 bundle 6 chilling
2 calm down 7 driving
3 laid-back 8 stressed
4 nerves 9 edge
5 demanding
- 5 (answers in brackets are correct, but are less natural)
1 The noise of the construction work outside our hotel room was driving me up the wall/(really) getting on my nerves.
2 The ambulance staff were trying to get the victim to calm down.
3 Joon-ho seemed a bit stressed out about moving house.
4 When there's an inspection at the hospital, all the staff are on edge (about it).
5 We're going to the coast for a long weekend, just to chill out.
6 I was a bundle of nerves (really on edge/really stressed out) before the interview, but talking to Patrick about it made me feel a bit better.
7 It may sound easy, but it's actually a very demanding task that requires great skill and patience.
8 I find that the people there generally have a more laid-back attitude to life than we do.

- 9 We start to get on each other's nerves/drive each other up the wall if we spend too much time together.

6.3 Vocabulary development page 42

Vocabulary words with more than one meaning

- 1 1 reflect(ed)
2 race
3 point(s)
4 ring
5 manage(s)

Vocabulary extension

- 2a 1 c 5 f
2 h 6 a
3 g 7 e
4 d 8 b

- 2b 1 *archaeology* 5 computing
2 maths 6 law
3 medicine 7 sport
4 politics 8 finance

6.4 Speaking and writing page 43

Speaking vague language (2)

- 1a 1 thing
2 ever
3 plenty of; just a
4 or something like that
5 rather
6 stuff

Writing online reviews

- 2 1 *powerful/dazzling/engaging*
2 highlight
3 wooden
4 perfect
5 engaging/dazzling
6 disappointment
7 must-see
8 lacking
9 dazzling
10 engaging/action-packed
11 steal
12 life
- 3 *Suggested changes:*
1 *thoroughly engaging*
2 (really) stole the show
3 (particularly) powerful
4 (absolutely) dazzling visual effects
5 (notable) highlight
6 a slight disappointment
7 was a little lacking in atmosphere
8 engaging plot
9 a must-see (play/production)

Review: Units 5 and 6 page 45

Grammar

- 1 1 where 4 Each
2 was 5 would
3 which 6 all

- 2 1 S 3 S
2 D 4 D

Vocabulary

- 3 1 shortage of 5 bundle of nerves
2 majority 6 loathe
3 dozens 7 look down on
4 demanding

- 4 1 demanding 5 Dozens
2 world-famous 6 a few of whom
3 regard 7 edge
4 handful 8 majority

Speaking

- 5 1 pretty/ever so/kind of
2 stuff
3 ever so/pretty/kind of/somewhat
4 some sort of
5 loads of

Unit 7 Emotion and reason

7.1 Fooled by our feelings page 46

Grammar hypotheses

- 1a 1 you'll 5 you'd pick
2 they were 6 they'd
3 we tend 7 wanted
4 Had

- 1b 1 came across
2 'd/would probably think
3 found out
4 leaves
5 had considered
6 might have come up with

Vocabulary emotions

- 2a 1 N 7 P
2 N 8 N
3 N 9 N
4 N 10 N
5 P 11 N
6 N 12 N

2b

Adjective	Noun	Verb
devastated / <i>devastating</i>	devastation	devastate
envious	envy	envy
frustrated / frustrating	frustration	frustrate
apprehensive	apprehension	
relieved *	relief	relieve
irritated / irritating	irritation	irritate
astonished / astonishing	astonishment	astonish
sympathetic	sympathy	sympathize
apathetic	apathy	
self-conscious	self-consciousness	
indifferent	indifference	
uncomfortable **	discomfort	discomfort

* *relieving* doesn't exist unless in a compound, e.g. *pain-relieving medicine*.

** *discomforted* and *discomforting* are also possible adjective forms but are less frequent and more restricted in usage.

- 3 1 apathy/indifference
2 uncomfortable/self-conscious/
apprehensive
3 irritates
4 indifferent/apathetic
5 astonished
6 devastating
7 relieved
8 frustrating

7.2 Embarrassment page 48

Grammar unreality

- 1 1 was 6 would stop
2 didn't mention 7 was
3 'd/had asked 8 didn't take
4 didn't know 9 wouldn't leave
5 had backed up 10 could talk

- 2 1 was
2 'd had/had had
3 had
4 kept
5 owned
6 spoke
7 finished off
8 didn't
9 was
10 'd clear up/would clear up
11 was
12 wouldn't make

Vocabulary reacting to events

- 3a 1 b 6 a
2 g 7 f
3 i 8 c
4 j 9 h
5 d 10 e

- 4 1 *is getting on my nerves*
2 take it personally
3 think twice
4 took me by surprise
5 mortified
6 think straight

- 5 a 2 e 1
b 3 f 5
c 8 g 7
d 4 h 6

7.3 Vocabulary development page 50

Vocabulary metaphor

- 1a 1 b 2 a 3 c

- 1b 1 ups 6 sound
2 spirits 7 demolish
3 lift 8 rollercoaster
4 construct 9 down
5 support 10 low

Vocabulary extension

- 2a hot c
cold a

- 2b 1 c 6 b
2 c 7 a
3 b 8 c
4 a 9 b
5 c 10 a

7.4 Speaking and writing page 51

Speaking informal negotiations

- 1a 1 Is there a problem with that?
2 What if I were to
3 provided
4 if we could
5 did you have in mind
6 Supposing we
7 that sounds
8 it depends what you mean
9 I'll have to ask

Writing comment adverbs

- 2 1 *frankly*
2 *thankfully*
3 *unfortunately*
4 *admittedly*
5 *coincidentally*
6 *evidently*

Unit 8 Plastic

8.1 The multi-purpose material

page 52

Vocabulary properties of materials

- 1 1 flexible 6 biodegradable
2 durable 7 tough
3 versatile 8 water-resistant
4 lightweight 9 fragile
5 rigid

- 2a 1 ~~absorbent~~
2 biodegradable
3 durable
4 flexible
5 versatile
6 water-resistant
7 transparent

- 3 1 *a thin flexible tube*
2 bring a water-resistant jacket
3 made of advanced lightweight materials
4 made from transparent plastic are lighter
5 use biodegradable containers
6 for companies sending out fragile items in the post

Grammar probability and speculation

- 4a 1a they can crack
1b they'll crack
2a they're bound to be
2b might be
3a can't be made
3b unlikely
4a might have been made
4b must have been made
5a a chance that (the festival) might be cancelled
5b unlikely (the festival) will go ahead
6a could last
6b they're guaranteed to last
7a sure to see
7b may soon become
8a seems likely that
8b would have used

- 4b 1 b 5 b
2 a 6 b
3 a 7 a
4 b 8 b

5 Suggested answers:

- 1 *Of course, there's a chance (that) scientists will find ...*
2 It's doubtful that most people know exactly what materials go into making their tablet or smartphone.
3 Manufacturers must be aware of the environmental costs of the materials they use.

- 4 If you don't know the origin of the wood you buy, it might not have come from a sustainable source.
5 This new model is guaranteed to outperform anything else on the market.
6 The fabric can't be man-made – it feels too natural.
7 More things are bound to be custom-made using 3D printers in the future.
8 Nadine might have already gone home as she's not at her desk.
9 It was always improbable that the party would do well in the election.
10 Wei should have arrived in Vancouver by now, as it's only a two-hour flight.
11 The favourite is most likely to come first, but it doesn't always pan out that way.
12 Silk is a very delicate fabric and/that is prone to damage if not handled carefully.
13 The recent negative press coverage is sure to have influenced the company's decision to make an announcement.
14 It's currently estimated that up to 20,000 people will have been affected by the flooding.

8.2 My life without ... page 54

Grammar participle clauses

- 1 1 living and working
2 having lived
3 speaking
4 having
5 walking
6 wrapped
7 moving
8 Given
9 selling
10 arriving
11 Being
12 having grown up
13 Growing
14 having
15 Given
16 being

- 2 1 *If asked*
2 Being a big sports fan
3 all the fireworks going off to celebrate
4 Having lived abroad
5 Since marrying
6 Since coming to the USA
7 if pushed
8 Coming/Having come from a small island; not having the sea nearby
9 Offered one luxury from home
10 Having chosen to move here

Vocabulary phrasal verbs

- 3a 1 *coming up with*
2 look (the address) up
3 came up
4 get on with
5 count on
6 looks after
7 chill out
8 cut down on
9 taken (quite a bit of the budget) up
10 goes up

- 3b a 3, 7, 10 c 2, 9
b 5, 6 d 1, 4, 8

- 4a 1 on 5 on
2 on 6 off
3 off 7 on
4 off 8 on

- 5a 1 milk/food *go off*
2 a new product/an idea *catch on*
3 a problem/a question *come up*
4 *give off* fumes/a smell
5 look up information/a word
6 negotiations/a court case *drag on*
7 put off a meeting/an appointment
8 run on diesel/electricity
9 prices/standards *go up*
10 build on previous research/
your strengths

- 5b Students' own answers

8.3 Vocabulary development page 56

Vocabulary formal and informal language

- 1a 1 F 4 I
2 I 5 F
3 F 6 I

- 1b 1 Why are we expected to study subjects at school that have nothing to do with our everyday lives?
2 She had no memory of the incident.
3 We frequently decide on things without knowing the full facts.
4 Most people have little awareness of why we make a choice of one thing and not another.
5 Advertisers make use of a range of tactics to talk us into buying a particular product.
6 Describe the use of metaphor in literature, with reference to two works on the reading list.

Vocabulary extension

- 2a 1 endeavour 6 pop
2 celebs 7 declined
3 moaning 8 stuff
4 employed 9 accompanied
5 comfy 10 observed

2b

More formal	Neutral	More informal
	celebrity	celeb
	comfortable	comfy
	complaining	moaning
enter	put (in)	pop (in)
accompany	take	go with
belongings / possessions	things	stuff
endeavour	try	have a go (at)
decline	turn down / say no	
employ	use	
observe	watch	keep an eye on

8.4 Speaking and writing page 57

Speaking speculating, comparing and contrasting

1a They're comparing two designs for a company logo. They like the second design.

- 1b**
- 1 they're both
 - 2 looks like
 - 3 some kind of
 - 4 might be
 - 5 or something like that
 - 6 doubtful if
 - 7 By contrast
 - 8 I suppose
 - 9 whereas

Writing a problem-solution-evaluation essay or report

- 2**
- | | |
|-----|------|
| 1 c | 6 a |
| 2 h | 7 g |
| 3 i | 8 d |
| 4 b | 9 e |
| 5 j | 10 f |

8.5 Listening for pleasure page 58

The science of happiness

- 2**
- | | |
|-----|---------|
| a P | e M |
| b M | f E |
| c E | g P/E/M |
| d P | h E |

- 3** 2, 3, 5, 7 and 8

Review: Units 7 and 8 page 59

Grammar

- 1**
- 1 must have taken
 - 2 hadn't noticed
 - 3 we'd known
 - 4 would never have gone
 - 5 hadn't been
 - 6 may soon be able
 - 7 to experience
 - 8 had failed

Vocabulary

- 2a**
- | | |
|-----|------|
| 1 O | 7 E |
| 2 E | 8 O |
| 3 E | 9 O |
| 4 E | 10 E |
| 5 O | 11 O |
| 6 E | 12 E |

- 2b**
- 1 irritating, relief
 - 2 lightweight, durability
 - 3 surprise, self-conscious
 - 4 rigid, transparent

Speaking

- 3**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 d | 4 c |
| 2 f | 5 e |
| 3 a | 6 b |

Unit 9 Learning

9.1 The best way to learn page 60

Grammar will

- 1a**
- 1 will approach
 - 2 will tend to
 - 3 will often ignore
 - 4 won't even consider
 - 5 won't work
 - 6 will have become
 - 7 they'll have to
 - 8 will need to
 - 9 will embrace
 - 10 They'll take

- 1b**
- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 same | 6 different |
| 2 same | 7 different |
| 3 same | 8 same |
| 4 same | 9 different |
| 5 different | 10 different |

- 2**
- 1 will try out
 - 2 'll/will probably come up with
 - 3 will have got
 - 4 Will you send/Will you be sending
 - 5 will become
 - 6 will still be memorizing
 - 7 will have wasted
 - 8 will insist on
 - 9 won't think
 - 10 will be writing/will write

Vocabulary idiomatic phrases with will

- 3a**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 b | 5 c |
| 2 h | 6 g |
| 3 f | 7 d |
| 4 e | 8 a |
- 4a**
- It won't be long till
 - I'll believe it when I see it.
 - We'll see.
 - I simply won't hear of it.
 - I'll let you know.
 - If you'll just
 - you'll see
 - That'll be
- 5**
- 1 it won't be long till
 - 2 You'll see.
 - 3 If you'll just
 - 4 (then) I'll let you know
 - 5 We'll see.
 - 6 I'll believe it when I see it.
 - 7 that'll be

9.2 The future of higher education page 62

Vocabulary higher education

- 1**
- | | |
|-----|------|
| 1 b | 7 g |
| 2 l | 8 i |
| 3 k | 9 d |
| 4 a | 10 f |
| 5 j | 11 e |
| 6 c | 12 h |
- 2**
- 1 offshore campus
 - 2 apprenticeship scheme
 - 3 international student
 - 4 blended learning
 - 5 virtual learning environment
 - 6 tuition fees
 - 7 external accreditation
 - 8 mature student
 - 9 student loan
 - 10 quality assurance
 - 11 year abroad
 - 12 vocational training

Grammar the future

- 3**
- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1 to increase | 6 to open |
| 2 to introduce | 7 to attract |
| 3 of scrapping | 8 of becoming |
| 4 to have | 9 to recruit |
| 5 to develop | 10 is to announce |
- 4a** Suggested answers:
- 1 is expected
 - 2 are on the point of
 - 3 will be giving/will give
 - 4 will have to
 - 5 is set to
 - 6 will have
 - 7 is planning/plans
 - 8 will be recording/will record

- 9 aim to/are aiming to
- 10 hope/are hoping
- 11 will have been replaced/will be replaced
- 12 will be able to

- 4b**
- 1 Will the department be providing more language support for students?
 - 2 Are you expecting to lose some home students to universities that don't use English?
 - 3 Do other departments plan to switch to English-only instruction?
 - 4 When is the new virtual learning environment due to go live?
 - 5 Will you be streaming lectures live online?
 - 6 Do you think face-to-face learning will have been replaced entirely in a few years' time?

9.3 Vocabulary development page 64

Vocabulary three ways to create new words

- 1a**
- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 land | 7 e-banking |
| 2 e-cigarettes | 8 conventional |
| 3 guesstimate | 9 chillax |
| 4 regular | 10 e-reader |
| 5 staycation | 11 tap |
| 6 m-ticketing | 12 hard |

- 1b**
- a 2, 6, 7, 10
 - b 1, 4, 8, 11, 12
 - c 3, 5, 9

Vocabulary extension

- 2a**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 c | 5 h |
| 2 f | 6 e |
| 3 d | 7 g |
| 4 a | 8 b |

- 2b**
- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 podcast | 5 green |
| 2 text | 6 medalled |
| 3 bookended | 7 actioning |
| 4 minuted | 8 trending |

9.4 Speaking and writing page 65

Speaking giving a presentation

- 1a** 1 and 4

- 1b**
- 1 will focus on
 - 2 First of all
 - 3 To a great extent
 - 4 I'd now like to
 - 5 Broadly speaking
 - 6 not everyone sees
 - 7 take the view that
 - 8 Only time will tell if
 - 9 there's no denying that

Writing discourse markers

- 2a**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 c | 5 b |
| 2 d | 6 e |
| 3 f | 7 g |
| 4 a | |

Unit 10 New

10.1 New ways to pay page 66

Grammar noun phrases

- 1**
- 1 *new and simpler ways for consumers to pay for goods*
 - 2 without the need for them to enter their PIN
 - 3 a limit on how much can be paid
 - 4 The premise of most apps
 - 5 the checkout of a shop that accepts payments
 - 6 the hassle of getting your mobile out of your pocket
 - 7 two of the wearable tech options to have been trialled
 - 8 awkward conversations about who has the right change
 - 9 their share of the bill
 - 10 the capability to accept card payments
 - 11 the headphone jack of their smartphone
 - 12 a percentage of each transaction

- 2a**
- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 1 in | c |
| 2 of | h |
| 3 between/of | e |
| 4 for | a |
| 5 about | d |
| 6 to | g |
| 7 of | b |
| 8 for | f |

Vocabulary money

- 3**
- 1 well-off
 - 2 luxuries
 - 3 manage
 - 4 make ends meet
 - 5 funding
 - 6 allowed
 - 7 unpaid
 - 8 went overdrawn
 - 9 lose

- 4**
- 1 well-off
 - 2 unpaid
 - 3 funding (for)
 - 4 withdraw
 - 5 going overdrawn
 - 6 allow

10.2 Live! page 68

Grammar position of adverbials

- 1a** 1 b 2 c

- 1b**
- 1 *At first*, I was really excited about ...
 - 2 ... the cameramen captured shots **from every angle**.
 - 3 ... that went into **carefully** creating exactly what the director was looking for.
 - 4 I **even** enjoyed watching the more mundane stuff, like .../... and **even** the catering crew preparing meals for all those people.
 - 5 In the end, I think I **only** appeared on screen ...
 - 6 The whole experience **just** gave me ...
 - 7 I **still** can't watch a movie without ...
 - 8 I was lucky enough to go **to Tunisia for two months** to work on a small-scale project .../I was lucky enough to go **to Tunisia** to work **for two months** on a small-scale project ...
 - 9 It was a fascinating project **from an engineering perspective**, using ...
 - 10 I can **still vividly** remember waking up **on my first morning** and ...
 - 11 It was so unlike anything I'd **ever** seen before.
 - 12 I'd been told that we'd **only** be able to work ...
 - 13 But what **really** caught me by surprise was how the temperature dropped **so dramatically after sunset**./But what **really** caught me by surprise was how the temperature dropped **after sunset so dramatically**.
 - 14 The extremes of the environment **hugely** affected how people lived **there**./The extremes of the environment **hugely** affected how people **there** lived.
 - 15 ... and **actually** seeing how water use had to be **carefully** managed gave all the more motivation to make the project a success./... and **actually** seeing how water use had to be managed **carefully** gave all the more motivation to make the project a success.

- 2**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 a | 6 a |
| 2 b | 7 b |
| 3 b | 8 c |
| 4 a | 9 a |
| 5 b | |

Vocabulary new and old

- 3** 1 N 5 O
2 N 6 N
3 O 7 N
4 N 8 O
- 4** 1 dated
2 obsolete
3 recondition
4 innovation
5 developments
6 pioneers
7 departure
8 revolutionize
9 breaking new ground
10 the last word

10.3 Vocabulary development
page 70**Vocabulary** understanding idioms

- 1** 1 j 6 d
2 i 7 a
3 b 8 c
4 f 9 g
5 h 10 e

Vocabulary extension

- 2a** 1 c 4 f
2 d 5 e
3 a 6 b

- 2b** 1 *stand* (out like a sore thumb)
2 move with (the times)
3 lay (eyes on sb.)
4 put (a dent in sth.)
5 put aside (sth. for a rainy day)
6 charge (the earth)
The meaning changes in
2 *keep up/move with the times*
and 6 *cost/charge the earth*.

10.4 Speaking and writing page 71**Speaking** reaching a consensus

- 1a** 1 (the) local council
2 (a) website
3 links
4 (the) older
5 (a) noticeboard
6 messy
7 both/two
8 hard copy
9 noticeboard

- 1b** 1 *go for*
2 what you're saying
3 be better
4 what's your
5 it could
6 be right
7 think about it
8 decided

Writing an email enquiry

- 2** *Suggested answers:*
a 4 f 11 k 8
b 10 g 1 l 9
c 15 h 3 m 12
d 2 i 7 n 5
e 6 j 13 o 14

Review: Units 9 and 10 page 73**Grammar**

- 1** 1 will have visited
2 opening
3 to release
4 will be going
- 2** 1 We're the first team to have carried out research in this area.
2 He pioneered the idea of using computer modelling to research disease.
3 There has been a lot of discussion about whether the results are credible.
4 There's clearly a need for patients to understand more about the condition.

Vocabulary

- 3** 1 tuition fees
2 funding
3 student loans
4 forked out
5 luxuries
6 make ends meet
7 international
8 raw deal
- 4** 1 a 4 e
2 f 5 b
3 d 6 c

Speaking

- 5** 1 focuses/will focus
2 start
3 speaking
4 Moving
5 denying

11 Origins**11.1 Origins of language** page 74**Grammar** adjective position

- 1a** 1 English is *well-known* for
2 There are **conflicting** estimates
3 many of these being words **largely used/used largely** in
4 a **mere** 6%
5 A **large** proportion of the French words
6 is perhaps **unsurprising**
7 the language of the **ruling** classes

- 8 in **scholarly** circles,
9 over a quarter of **new** words
10 **a significant** impact
11 despite its **rich** heritage,
12 and in **recent** centuries,
13 the influence has become less **prominent**.
14 by combining **existing** words,
15 are **likely** to have been borrowed from local languages
16 And the indigenous languages of the Americas are **responsible** for
17 the now **familiar** names of
18 many foodstuffs originally **found** there

- 1b** 1 the Norman Conquest
2 Greek
3 English
4 local

- 2** 1 *b* 6 *b*
2 *a* 7 *a*
3 *b* 8 *b*
4 *a* 9 *b*
5 *a* 10 *a*

- 3** 1 present
2 conscious
3 economic
4 concerned (*responsible* is possible but less likely)
5 responsible

Vocabulary adjectives and adverbs beginning with a-

- 4** 1 alert 5 awake
2 alike 6 alone
3 alive 7 awash
4 afraid 8 afloat

- 5** 1 are exactly alike
2 stay alive
3 become afraid of
4 stayed awake
5 remain alert
6 keep afloat

11.2 Origins of world food page 76**Grammar** *whoever, whatever, wherever, no matter*

- 1** 1 whatever
2 Whoever
3 whatever
4 whichever/whatever
5 Whenever
6 wherever/whenever
7 whatever
8 wherever/whenever

- 2a** 1 Whichever 4 Whoever
2 whatsoever 5 whatever
3 no matter how 6 Whenever

- 3 1 *No matter where*
 2 whatever/no matter what
 3 Whenever
 4 Whoever
 5 wherever/no matter where
 6 Whichever/No matter which
 7 whatever/whichever
 8 whatsoever/whatever
 9 however

Vocabulary food preparation

- 4a 1 *Season the sauce generously with salt.*
 2 Chop the potatoes into 1 cm cubes.
 3 Slice the bread thickly.
 4 Melt the butter over a low heat.
 5 Peel the skin off the apples.
 6 Grill the fish for 10 minutes.
 7 Beat the eggs and cream together gently.
 8 Grate the zest off the rind of one lemon.

- 4b 1 *beat* 4 grate
 2 peel 5 season
 3 chop, slice

- 5a 1 *f* sliced
 2 d grated
 3 b beaten
 4 h grilled
 5 peel e
 6 a season
 7 c chopped
 8 melted g

11.3 Vocabulary development page 78

Vocabulary fixed and semi-fixed phrases

- 1 1 the truth
 2 a clue
 3 to now
 4 as far
 5 before
 6 by no
 7 you know what/(you see what)
 8 the way

- 2 1 *c* h
 2 b d
 3 a f
 4 e g

Vocabulary extension

- 3a 1 d 5 e
 2 f 6 c
 3 g 7 h
 4 b 8 a

- 3b 1 *within living memory*
 2 recipe for failure
 3 in the first instance
 4 started from scratch
 5 back in the 80s

11.4 Speaking and writing page 79

Speaking emphasis

- 1 1 country 4 tried
 2 all 5 packed
 3 stunningly 6 everyone
- 2 *Suggested answers:*
 1 No way can you avoid getting/The thing that/What you can't avoid is getting covered in the coloured powder ...
 2 Only when we reached the top of the hill and looked back did we appreciate the scale of the crowds.
 3 Not for a minute did the music and dancing stop/The thing that/What didn't stop the whole time was the music and dancing.
 4 Never in a million years would I have expected to find myself jumping .../The thing that/What I never expected to find myself doing was jumping ...

Writing a blog entry

- 3 1 ✓
 2 ? (too formal)
 3 ✓
 4 ✓
 5 ? (too formal)
 6 ? (not an engaging closing sentence)

Unit 12 Memory

12.1 Types of memory page 80

Grammar causatives *have* and *get*

- 1 1 have DNA tests carried out
 2 get eyewitnesses to pick out
 3 get them to add
 4 have witnesses recall
 5 get stored
 6 gets us to recount
 7 has a witness describe
 8 get reconstructed
 9 has information coming in
 10 get combined
- 2 1 If my phone got stolen, I wouldn't be able to ...
 2 ... my mum had me put/got me to put the door key round my neck ...
 3 ... the last time I got/had my car serviced.
 4 ... he soon got/had members of the local community to help him.
 5 I got stung by a bee when I was a kid ...

- 6 Many schools still get kids to memorize/have kids memorize lists of facts ...
 7 ... everyday skills like what to do when something breaks and you need to get it fixed.
 8 ... and getting/having them delivered.

Vocabulary meanings of *off*, *down* and *over*

- 3 1 *written*
 2 During
 3 about
 4 depends on
 5 cancelled
 6 not working
 7 discount
 8 happening soon
- 4 1 over 7 over
 2 off 8 down
 3 down 9 down
 4 down 10 off
 5 over 11 over
 6 off 12 off
- 5 1 ... *networks were down.*
 2 The match in São Paulo is *off* ...
 3 ... or money *off* tickets ...
 4 ... some shellfish that *was off/had gone off.*
 5 ... managed to *get down/note down/take down* the car's registration number.
 6 ... can *be down to* a number of factors.
 7 The trial may *be a (long) way off/some time off* ...
 8 ... *over the course of* ...
 9 ... disagreement amongst researchers *over* exactly ...
 10 ... may also *be down to the fact that* people's ability ...

12.2 Improving your memory page 82

Grammar reporting verbs

- 1 1 f 5 b
 2 c 6 e
 3 a 7 d
 4 h 8 g
- 2 1 *acknowledged to boost*
 2 suggests that/has suggested that
 3 advise students to try/have advised students to try
 4 reflecting on
 5 claim that/have claimed that
 6 emphasize the importance of
 7 advise students not to work/have advised students not to work
 8 asserted that
 9 urging students to work

3 Suggested answers:

- 1 The blog endorses exercise as a means to improve memory.
- 2 The writer suggests that teaching ideas to others helps/can help you (to) remember them.
- 3 The blog advises students to read texts aloud.
- 4 The blog emphasizes the need for students to take regular breaks.
- 5 The writer claims that new information is not/will not be retained if you study/someone studies for (more than) 90 minutes without a break.
- 6 The post acknowledges study groups to be/as being a useful way to improve (your/everyone's) understanding.

Vocabulary describing research and results

- 1 link ... to
- 2 number
- 3 remember
- 4 basic/(big)
- 5 repeat
- 6 clear
- 7 big
- 8 roughly
- 9 idea
- 10 suggestion
- 11 understanding

- 1 implications
- 2 substantial
- 3 reproduce
- 4 misinterpret
- 5 fundamentally
- 6 disproportionate

- 1 proportion
- 2 retained
- 3 broadly
- 4 reproduced
- 5 implications
- 6 substantial
- 7 interprets
- 8 noticeable/substantial
- 9 associated with
- 10 principle
- 11 fundamentally

12.3 Vocabulary development page 84**Vocabulary** noticing, selecting and recording collocations

- 1 long-term
- 2 vivid
- 3 trigger
- 4 attention
- 5 mind
- 6 conduct
- 7 research
- 8 cite
- 9 strategy
- 10 have
- 11 reading
- 12 main

- 1 vivid
- 2 main
- 3 effective; speed
- 4 shorter
- 5 conducted/carried out; cite

Vocabulary extension**3a Suggested answers:**

- 1 The study found that approximately 8% of these patients suffered an impairment of kidney function after undergoing surgery.
- 2 The 2008 regulations are only a small part of the statutory provisions concerned with health and safety at work.
- 3 He concluded that he had obtained sufficient empirical evidence to support the hypothesis of the existence of a long-wave economic cycle.

3b

1	suffer	an impairment	medical
2	have	surgery	general / medical
3	undergo		medical
4	a statutory	provision	legal
5	health	and safety	general / legal
6	find	evidence	general
7	obtain		academic
8	new / good	evidence	general
9	empirical		academic
10	support	a hypothesis	academic

12.4 Speaking and writing page 85**Speaking** talking about a magazine story

- 1a 1 Did you hear
- 2 he'd kept
- 3 he's only gone and deleted
- 4 He must've been
- 5 absolutely devastated
- 6 What made it worse was that
- 7 was it
- 8 it must've been

- 1b The story probably has a happy ending.

Writing a magazine story

- 2a 3

- 2b 1 g
- 2 a
- 3 f
- 4 e
- 5 c
- 6 h
- 7 d
- 8 b

12.5 Listening for pleasure page 86**What makes you you?**

- 3a 1 upbringing
- 2 predispositions
- 3 shyness
- 4 environment
- 5 imitation
- 6 (survival) instinct
- 7 49
- 8 51

Review: Units 11 and 12 page 87**Grammar****1 Suggested answers:**

- 1 Online security advice emphasizes the importance of keeping anti-virus software updated.
- 2 Ergonomics experts advise new staff to have their work station set-up properly assessed.
- 3 Zoologists claim that they have discovered/Zoologists claim to have discovered a number of new species of butterfly in the rainforest.
- 4 As customer care manager, she insists on the need for new clients to have a one-to-one consultation to assess their needs./that new clients have a one-to-one consultation to assess their needs.
- 5 The researchers acknowledge the need for further research to corroborate these findings./that further research is needed to corroborate these findings.
- 6 The research suggests that there is a clear link between/The research suggests a clear link between social class and career success.

- 2 1 They got the engineer to service the entire heating system.
- 2 I always spot something new no matter how many times I visit.
- 3 The gene is only present in about 2% of the population.
- 4 We had the entire apartment professionally cleaned.
- 5 There are plans afoot to convert the old factory into an arts centre.
- 6 I have no doubt whatsoever that she will turn the company's fortunes around.

Vocabulary

- 3 1 awash
- 2 means
- 3 tell you
- 4 proportion
- 5 down
- 6 implications
- 7 interpretation
- 8 effective
- 9 aware

Speaking

- 4a 1 b
- 2 f
- 3 d
- 4 e
- 5 a
- 6 c

- 4b Suggested order: 3, 1, 6, 5, 2, 4

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2016

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

e-Book Edition

ISBN: 978 0 19 456696 4

e-book

ISBN: 978 0 19 456698 8

e-book (In-App)

First published in 2016

No copying or file sharing

This digital publication is protected by international copyright laws.

No part of this digital publication may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, to any other person or company without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer or circulate the contents of this publication under any other branding or as part of any other product. You may not print out material for any commercial purpose or resale

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims all and any responsibility for the content of such websites

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs: 123RF p.86 (blackboard drawing/maridav); Alamy Images pp.4 (food delivery/Tony Taltec), 15 (science lesson about water/BonkersAboutPictures), 19 (Nottingham Goose Fair/eye35.pix), 20 (boys playing cricket in front of Taj Mahal/nobleIMAGES), 34 (solar flare emitted from Sun/NASA Archive), 35 (Inuit hunter in Greenland/louise murray), 54 (houses in Philippines/Thomas Cockrem), 70 (US dollar on fork/Feng Yu), 79 (Marchers in the Fasnacht, Swiss Carnival/E.J. Baumeister Jr.); Corbis pp.16 (garden outside window/Andreas von Einsiedel), 25 (coach using digital tablet/Blend Images), 81 (witness testifying in court/Heide Benser); Getty Images pp.13 (runner's leg/Yuri_Arcurs), 15 (hospital corridor/Caiaimage/Robert Daly), 15 (mother and sons/Maskot), 18 (woman in office/Hero Images), 20 (New Zealand rugby team/Phil Walter), 20 (fans celebrating at football match/Chris Whitehead), 24 (boy boarding plane/Jupiterimages), 26 (voting slip/David Gould), 30 (woman using digital tablet/Morsa Images), 33 (woman taking photo on phone/Pacific Press), 34 (Northern Lights/Daniel J Cox), 38 (teacher and students looking at tablet/Klaus Vedfelt), 40 (father and children/Images Of Our Lives), 50 (sunrise in Himalayas/Bartosz Hadyniak), 51 (hotel room/David Peevers), 66 (contactless payment/Tommaso Tagliaferri), 71 (tourist taking photo in Marrakech/Elan Fleisher/LOOK-foto), 76 (tomato plant/DEA/G. Cigolini/Veneranda Biblioteca Ambrosiana), 86 (teen boys in school corridor/Cultura RM/Nancy Honey); Guzelian Photography, News & Features p.84 (Stan Beaton); iStockphoto pp.4 (flicking through book/schakutjee), 48 (unhappy teenage boy/Steve Debenport); Kevin Berne Images p.43 (The Kite Runner stage production); Oxford University Press pp.18 (businesswoman/Digital Vision), 18 (businessman/Eric Audras), 52 (blue plastic bag/MNI), 77 (whisk/Jiri Hera), 77 (carving knife/Photodisc), 77 (salt mill/Robnroll); Rex Features p.69 (Liz Scarff with Freegans Ashwyn Fackingham and Ross Parry looking for food in a shopping area in Lewisham/David Sandison/The Independent); Shutterstock pp.4 (mother and child/Image Point Fr), 4 (woman cooking/Jeanette Dietl), 4 (bored office worker/Stock-Asso), 6 (woman working on laptop/StockLite), 7 (old way, new way/Thinglass), 10 (wildlife photographer/aaltair), 11 (desert plant/Louie Schoeman), 15 (man giving presentation/Sergey Nivens), 17 (young man drinking coffee/mimagephotography), 19 (group of people rafting/Ammit Jack), 20 (volleyball game/dotshock), 20 (man running/Mooshny), 20 (three friends cheering/Syda Productions), 21 (woman snowboarding/Sorbis), 22 (confused woman/Creativa Images), 23 (business meeting/StockLite), 29 (businessman/racorn), 30 (office worker/wavebreakmedia), 30 (student in library/Ermolaev Alexander), 30 (man on train/Peter Bernik), 37 (burger and chips/gmeviphoto), 41 (portrait of smiling man/aastock), 41 (business woman/Nadino), 41 (portrait of older man/Diego Cervo), 42 (forest and lake/Elena Elisseeva), 44 (people using devices/Rawpixel), 44 (social media icons on smartphone/Twin Design), 45 (ballet production/Sergey Petrov), 46 (statue of Aristotle/Panos Karas),

49 (faces showing emotions/Kamil Macniak), 50 (student looking at laptop/kinboris), 50 (businesswoman with staff/dotshock), 52 (teen girl surfing/iko), 52 (disposable cup/M. Unal Ozmen), 54 (man walking in snow/Anze Mulec), 54 (loaves of bread/Curioso), 56 (men shaking hands/Andresr), 56 (businessmen shaking hands/BlueSkyImage), 57 (office workers/Monkey Business Images), 58 (little boy eating dinner/Levrani), 58 (potter shaping clay/Rock and Wasp), 58 (volunteers collecting rubbish/wavebreakmedia), 58 (man installing solar panels/Monkey Business Images), 60 (child playing with puzzle/Nadezhda1906), 62 (carpentry lesson/Monkey Business Images), 64 (vintage telephone/Aaron Amat), 65 (students graduating/Rawpixel), 68 (Sahara desert/Filip Fuxa), 69 (pile of laptops/Ari N), 74 (Medieval writing/martin33), 75 (koala relaxing in tree/picturepartners), 76 (illustration of vanilla plant/Morphart Creation), 77 (chef preparing food/Sergey Mironov), 77 (potato peeler/Hepjam), 77 (cheese grater/Andrei Kuzmik), 80 (scientist working in lab/bogdanhoda), 82 (man walking on bridge/David Molina G), 83 (hands on keyboard/Kopytin Georgy), 86 (family portrait/Creativa Images).

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: pp.08, 28, 56 Definitions from *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, 9th edition. © Oxford University Press 2015. Reprinted by permission. p.09 Statistics from International Telecommunication Union. Reproduced by permission. p.72 Adapted extract from "Mindfulness at work: what are the benefits?" by Gill Crossland-Thackray, www.theguardian.com, 21 December 2012. Copyright Guardian News & Media Ltd 2015. Reproduced by permission.

Sources: p.09 "Internet Trends" by Mary Meeker, www.slideshare.net, April 2010. p.12 *The Global Auction* by Phillip Brown, Hugh Lauder and David Ashton (Oxford University Press, 2012). p.12 "Sports psychology", <https://wikipedia.org>, accessed 23 July 2015.